## Contents

**Editor’s Preface** .................................................................................................................. 7

**ARTICLES**

渡辺秀夫, 古典解釈における「近代」と「前近代」—「古今和歌集序」の“和歌発生論”の理解をめぐって—........................................................................ 11

English Summary .................................................................................................................... 20

Małgorzata Karolina Citko, Elements of “Possibly Chinese” Origin in Selected Poems by Princess Shikishi (1149-1201)……………………………………………………………………………… 21

論文の日本語レジュメ ........................................................................................................... 56

Agnieszka Żuławska-Umeda, Issues Relating to Notes from the Hut of Delusion – Bashō’s Returns from his Wanderings…………………………………… 57

論文の日本語レジュメ ........................................................................................................... 75

**INTERVIEW**

平野啓一郎先生インタビュー  二〇一一年十月十四日
ワルシャワ大学図書館にて  聞き手 ミコワイ・メラノヴィッチ教授 ............ 79

**REPRINTED WORKS OF POLISH JAPANOLOGISTS**

Jolanta Tubielewicz, Superstitions, Magic and Mantic Practices in the Heian Period – Part Two.................................................................................................................. 89

Prof. Jolanta Tubielewicz (1931–2003) .................................................................................. 175

Notes About the Authors ....................................................................................................... 176

List of Reviewers ................................................................................................................. 178

Information for Authors ...................................................................................................... 179
EDITOR’S PREFACE

Omne initium difficile est
Omne principium difficile
Omne principium grave
Initii difficultas toleranda
Omne vivum ex ovo

The above are but a selection from among numerous possibilities in Latin of interpreting the old German proverb stating that *aller Anfang ist schwer* ‘the first step is always the hardest’, なんでも初めは難しい。The formula is best known in German but experience standing behind the respective folk wisdom is doubtlessly universal. With the present volume we are making the second step on the “ten-thousand-li long” way to continue the publication of our journal conceived as the official organ of the Polish Association of Japanese Studies (PSBJ).

Volume One of these *Analecta* saw the light of the day approximately a year ago, dated 2011. It is still risky to assess its reception although no utterly negative opinions seem to have reached either the Editorial Board or the Editor, and we tried to implement conclusions from the few well-wishing suggestions so far received already in preparing the present Volume Two. Our intention is to be faithful to the etymology of the title of the journal: Latin *analecta* < Greek ανάλεκτα implies a selection of written passages or texts, in fragments or in their entirety and by one author or by various authors, accompanied by comments and source references, serving for discussion as well as didactic and research purposes, but originally the term was associated with ἄναλήκτης ‘a slave servant picking up meal crumbs from the floor’ < ἀναλέγω ‘pick up, collect; peck out (of woodpecker)’, but also ‘narrate, spread the word’, and even ‘read, have it read’.

Save the continuation of republishing the late Professor Jolanta Tubielewicz’s 1980 monograph on superstitious, magic and mantic practices in the Heian period,
now a hardly accessible antiquarian rarity, this volume is devoted exclusively to literary studies; nevertheless, this limitation has been far from intentional and does not preclude publishing contributions from all other fields of studies of our principal objects of interest – Japan and “things Japanese”. Contributions, criticism, and all other forms of response are cordially welcomed.

ARTICLES
古典解釈における「近代」と「前近代」
—「古今和歌集序」の“和歌発生論”の理解をめぐって—

「われわれとエリザベス時代の文学とを隔てる障壁は、当時にに関する情報不足というよりは、むしろ、当時の支配的な思考方法に対する共感が欠けていることである。現代科学の前提条件に規制されてわれわれは、それとは別の思考法の生み出したものが容易には理解できなくなっている」「例えば、占星術は、宇宙の万物は相関関係にあることを前提とするコスモス（秩序＝宇宙＝世界）観を受け入れなければ、愚の骨頂だし、また世界霊魂（アニマ・ムンディー）を認めなければ、輪廻転生も迷信である。世界霊魂とは、個々人の魂がそこから出てきては戻っていく世界の魂のことである。この二つの信念を支持する経験的証拠ははない。しかし、ひとたびコスモスなる事実を認めてしまえば、演繹論理学の規則により、占星術も輪廻転生も容認されることになる」「身近な視点とは全く違う視点が必要なのである」

S.K.Heninger. Jr.(注1)

はじめに（注2）

古典の注釈（理解）にあって、近代人としての自明の理解（暗黙裏の了解・思い込み）が、前近代の解釈とは大きく異なる、あるいは、前近代の注釈内容が理解しうる場合が少なくな、そこには思想的な基盤（“世界認識”“思考の枠組み”）を異にする価値観の大きな隔たりがあり、結果として、しばしば不明確で誤った解釈が放置されることとなる。これを回避するためには、その前提として前近代の“思考の枠組み”（人間観・世界観）を共有する必要がある。

現代をはるかに遡った古代の言語表現の理解に際し、我々はどのような前提で、何を基盤として、どんな共通認識——考え方の枠組み、思考の様式・ルールに従って臨んだらよいのか。書き手は、何を自明の前提・おすすめとして文を書いているのか。もとより書記行為のすべてが意識的位相になるわけではない。むしろその大部分は無意識的な、ある文化的な規範・様式性の“うつわ・のりもの”に依存
し、オートマチックに書いているのではないか。古典研究にあって、ブッキッシュな出典論・材料論では届かない手法的限界に、どのように向き合うのか。本稿では、現在、大きな疑念も抱かれず一般化された近代以前の通説の一例を批判的にとりあげ、中・近世の古注釈類の解釈例をも参照しながら、前近代の“儒教的な思想的枠組み”を復元的に共有することによって、それらをベースとして成り立つ古代の言説の同時代的な“本来の”“あるべき”解釈を呈示したい。

ここで取り上げるのは、『古今和歌集』序冒頭部の「和歌発生論」（下文ゴチック体箇所）の解釈に関してである。

やまとたは、人の心をたねとして、よろづの言の葉とぞなれりける。世の中にある人ことわざしげき物なれば、心におもふ事を、みる物きくものにつけていひ出せるなり。〈仮名序〉

夫和歌者、託其根於心地、発其花於詞林者也。人之在世、不能無為。思慮易遷、哀楽相変。感生於志、詠形於言（それ和歌は、その根を心地につけ、その花を詞林にひらくものなり。人の世に在るや、無為なることあたわす。思慮うつりやすく、哀楽あい変ず。感は志になり、詠は言にあらわる）。〈真名序〉

一 思想的枠組み——天・地・気と人（情）との関係構造

古今集序は、その内容からは当時の詩論をベースとしているが、同時に、様式的には各種の序（詩序・書序・集序等）を文章の“型”として依存しつつ書かれたものである。当世の文章規範からは「序」という文章の型に寄り添って初めて「序」たるうわけである。これは「真名序」とともに「仮名序」をも貫流する文体的枠組みである（「仮名序」といえども、正・俗の位相差はあるものの、共通の漢文世界の思想基盤上に成立している（注3）。そしてまた、こうした文体的な「型」とともに、いわばそれらを支える思想的な「型」（枠組み）について、詩歌の発生——心情表出のメカニズムを伴う古代的な人間観はどのようなものとして認識されているかという点への理解は、この種の文章を読む（書く）場合の基盤的な前提となる（注4）。

ところで、古今集序における詩歌論の当代的な環境ともいうべき、六朝～唐代に至る詩論（文論）学習の中、人は（人間の感情表出は）常に天・地・気とのかかわりのうちに論じられてきた。天地・気・陰陽を介して人の「性情」の発露に至る関係については、たとえば、以下のように説明される。

人は天地の覆載の徳（「天地之徳」）に感じ、陰陽の気合い交じり（「陰陽之交」）、形体（鬼）と精霊（神）が相会って（「鬼神之会」）生まれたものであり、五行の秀気感じたゆえに仁義礼智信（五常）を持つのだ（「故人者、其天地之徳、陰陽之交、鬼神之会、五行之秀気也」（『礼記』礼運）。また天地の間、四方の中央に住み、その動静が天地に呼応する人間は、人の腹中（五臓）に心があってその動静が人と応じるのとと同じく「天地の心」であり、また生類の「最霊」であってしかもその心は（五臓の）「最聖」。万物はすべて五行によって生じるが、人は最もその妙気を
古典解釈における「近代」と「前近代」―「古今和歌集序」の“和歌発生論”の理解をめぐって―

得たもので、仁義礼智信を明らかにして五行の首(はじめ)となるものである(「故人者、天地之心也、五行之端也」『礼記正義』礼運・孔疏)。

「天に六気があり、降っては五行となる云々」(『春秋左氏伝』昭公二五年)として、生命あるものは皆五行に感じて生まれ、そのうち唯一人間のみが(五行の)秀気を稟けている。それゆえ「人は五行の秀気」(『礼記』礼運)を稟けて生まれるや仁義礼智信の五常を内蔵し、この五常から六情が生じる(以上『礼記』中庸・孔疏)。あるいはまた、人は六気(陰陽風雨晦明)や四季(五行の気の変遷)のうち存在し、その清濁・醇醨(濃・薄)の気を享け、陰陽に感じて移り変わるもの。だから、「人生而静、天之性也。感物而動、性之欲也(人生まれて静か、天の性なり。物に感じて動く、性の欲なり)」(『礼記』楽記・楽本)というように、これらの気のうごきやありように応じて、喜怒哀楽の心が生じるので(以上『礼記正義』序)ともいう。こうした考え方は、多少の偏差を伴いながらもおおむね先秦から宋代を経て共通する理解基盤といえる(注5)。

図1参照

二 心情の発動メカニズム

さて、上記のように、『礼記』楽記(楽本)は、音楽(＝詩歌)の発生原論にふれて「人生まれて静か、天の性なり。物に感じて動く、性の欲なり」という。ここにいう「性」とは、「天」の「命」を稟けて人に授かった本然の「性」(未だ喜怒哀楽の情欲
を発現せず、五常・天性の善のみあるさま)をいう。『礼記』中庸に「天命ずる、これを性と謂う、性にしたがう、これを道と謂う、道をおさめる、これを教という(「天命之謂性、率性之謂道、修道之謂教」——天の「命」である本然至善の「性」のままに従うのが「道」であり、その至善の「性」に立ち返る(「復性」)することが修道(礼-教)という。授与者たる天が降ろす「命」はすなわち授受者たる人が禀けた「性」そのものである。

「性」とは喜怒哀楽の未発の狀態であり、喜怒哀楽の情は、物に感じて後はじめて動くもの。このような、外界の物(自然・四時)に触発されて心情が発生するという「物—心」感応説については、先秦以来、劉勰(『文心雕龍』)・鍾嶸(『詩品』)ら魏晋六朝期における成熟と定型化の画期を経てやがて空海の「感興勢」(『文鏡秘府論』地巻・論体勢)に至る、極めてオーソドックスで伝統的なものであった。いずれも、(本来「静」かで「内」に「隠」れている」「性」が、外界の物に触れはじめて、「動」して「外」に「顕」れる)「情(喜怒哀楽の情)が、発動するというのである。なお、戦国期の孔子門下たちは、このプロセスを詳細に分析し、外物にふれると「心」が生じ、その心が定まって「志」が生じ、志が「性」に働きかけて「情」が発動するという「性命論」的観察を残す(注6)。

さて、以上の儒学的な人間観・思想の枠組みを確認したうえで、次項では、同様の価値観を共有する前近代における当該古今集序の注釈例を参照することにしよう。
三　古典解釈における中・近世

北畠親房『古今和歌集註序』(注7)は、人心は元々渾沌未分より起こり天地人と気を同じくし善悪・正邪・凡聖の区別なく天真の道のみがあった。天地人が別れて凡人・聖人の区別が生じて以来、凡人は六識(五感・意識＝六根)が盛んに起こり本性を悟らなくなった。凡夫は六識に使役されてさまざまな妄念に捉われ三界流転の苦に悩む。しかし、その本源(天真の道・得法・悟道)を知れば凡聖の差別はない。この道理をよくよく悟って詠んだならばその歌は聖言であり、生死の苦海を離脱するよすがとなるが、現世の妄念に捉われて詠んだ歌は狂言絢語の誤りとなる。つまり、聖人は衆生済度に日々務めるがゆえに「ことわざしげき物」となるが、凡夫は六識に使役されさまざまな喜怒哀楽の想念を抱くがゆえに「ことわざしげき物」となるのだとする。

図3参照

次に、北村季吟『初雁文庫本古今集 教端抄』(注8)の注釈の理解は以下のようである。「ことわざ」とは、人間の日常生活に密着してある「わざ(行為・情動)」で、四季を愛で長寿を喜び死者を悼み、旅情・離別の悲哀、あるいは人を恋い、神仏に祈るなどの類といい、これらの「わざ」によって、それぞれに応じた心に思う喜怒哀楽のことばを連ね出す(詠歌する)のだという。宗祇注には「仮名序」の「
世の中にあることわざしげき物なければが「真名序」の「人之在世不能無為」の義に相当し、その「無為」とは「大道」のこともあり、これに対し、「其ノ後黒白をわ
かち、味をなむる事」、すなわち五感(或いは六識)のはたらきは、「皆ことわざ」に
ほかならない。従って、人の日常の生活における立ち居・振る舞い（行住坐臥）
すべてが「ことわざ」そのものであるという。

なおまた、『教端抄』は、真名序の「人之在世、不能無為」の意味は、「この世
に生を穂けた人間はすべて「しわざ」の無い者は無く、折節に触れて「喜怒愛悪
欲の七情」は絶えず変化し、喜怒哀楽の感情がこもごも生起して止まないので
あって（上の仮名序注の「ことわざとは人間の朝夕のさまざまなあるわざ也」に対応）、
これらもろもろの「しわざ」が皆、「歌のたね」となるのだという。つまり、「不能無為」
「ことわざしげき物」とは、外物に触発されて湧き上がり動揺してやまない喜怒哀
楽・七情の働きそのものということである。

◇「ことわざ」＝朝夕のさまざまなあるわざ／時節・慶弔～恋慕・神仏
祈願等の折節にふれての詠嘆
◇視覚・味覚～行住坐臥＝皆ことわざ
◇生命存在に必然のもの。喜怒哀楽の生起＝「このもろもろのしわ
ざ」→皆うたのたね
こうした理解は又、富士谷御杖『古今和歌集仮名序注』(注9)にもみられるものである。

人は皆、朝寝覚めてから夜眠るまで、「ことわざ」が頻繁に生起するものであり、ここから喜怒哀楽のこころが発動するので、「世の中にある人ことわざしげき物なければ」の箇所は、喜怒哀楽（六識・七情）の起こる「因本」（由縁・根源）を述べたものであるという。即ち、「ことわざしげき物」とは喜怒哀楽の感情を生じる心理・感情の発動メカニズムの由縁（原理）を指すというのである。

四 古典解釈における〈近代〉をかえりみる

近代以降現在に至る「世の中にある人ことわざしげき物なければ」の部分の解釈は、一様に、「生活上の事件が多いので」「事物や行為が多くあるものだから」（―「行為がたくさんある」とはいかなる意味なのか、あるいは「様々な出来事にかかわるものなので」、「まわりにさまざまな事がらが多いものであるからなどすると（注10）。折口信夫は、「この世界にある人は、非常にせわしない生活をしてい
ることだからして」と口語訳したうえで、「人事怱忙として、と訳せばひと通りはとおるが、どうもことわざしげき物なければ」は不正確で、右のように訳してよいような調子が出ていない」と疑問を呈する（注11）。いったい、事業繁多、すなわち、人はなすべきことが沢山ある、多端・多忙ゆえに、歌を詠むとてもいうのであろうか。

ここでは、詩歌発生論の一般通則を支える原論的前提——「世の中にある人」というものは、その根本の属性として「ことわざしげき物」であるがゆえに外物に触れて感情の発露（詠歌）に至るという、古代儒学の「性情論」——を保有しないことが、近・現代のこの箇所の解釈（口語訳）を、曖昧・意味不明なものにしている。ここでもやはり「身近な視点とは全く違う視点（前近代の支配的な思考法の共有）が必要なのである」。

南宋・朱熹「詩経集伝序」（『詩経集註』）は、詩歌はなぜうまれるのかという問い対し、先の「楽記」（楽本）を引いて以下のように応える。

『礼記』（楽記）に、人間は生まれた時にはその心は「静か」で「性」は天然自然のままひたすらに善（「性」の体=天理）だが、事物と触れると心が動いて喜怒哀楽の情欲が現れるもの（「性」の用）だ、とある。情欲が現れると、心中にあれこれと思いを巡らさざるをえぬものだし、思いが生じればおののちからその思う所を言い出す言葉を発せずにいられぬ。その言葉だけでは言い尽されぬ所を、あるいは短くあるいは長く嘆く余りに、おのずから節や拍子となって現れる。これが詩歌発生のもとである、と。

ここでもまた、本来の「性（静）」が外物に触れられて七情の働きが起こる（情欲が発動する）ところに、詩歌発生の機縁があるというのである。

以上の理解を前提にして、あらためて、古今集序をみてみよう。

夫和歌者、託其根於心地、発其花於詞林者也。

人之在世、不能無為。思慮易遷、哀楽相変。感生於志、詠形於言。
「人之在世、不能無為」とは、本来の「性」を保てず、情欲に心が動かされて止まないこと、即ち「無為(無為)」ではいられないこと——前田本『日本書紀』に「無為」を「しづか」とよむ古訓がある(注12)——であるから、すなわち「思慮易遷、哀楽相変(思慮遷りやすく、哀楽あい変す)”ということになるわけだ。仮名序・真名序の対応関係でいえば、「世の中にある人ことわざしげき物なれば」の部分は「人之在世、不能無為。思慮易遷、哀楽相変」に相当することになる。しかもまた、仮名序が、「世の中にある人ことわざしげき物なれば、心におもふ事を、みる物きくものにさせていひ出せるなり」というのもまた、外界の物に触れしてはじめて心情が発露する、この種の詩歌発生原論をふまえた文脈にあったということが知られるのである。

このようにみるならば、以上の検証を通じ、問題の「世の中にある人ことわざしげき物なれば」(「人之在世、不能無為。思慮易遷、哀楽相変」は、おおよそ、「この世にある人は、(外物に触れても)たえず喜怒哀楽の感情が盛んに働くものゆえ、「不能無為」=天性の「性」である「静」ではいられないので=情欲の発動をおさえることが出来ないから)と、解釈すべきものである。「ことわざ」は、人が生きてある限り時時刻刻表出する喜怒哀楽の感情にともなう「こと」と(言語／発話行為)と「わざ」(行為／しきり・みぶり・態度)をさしている。まさにそれは文字通り「しげき(頻繁な)」ものである。『礼記』楽記(楽言)に「夫民有血気心知之性、而無哀楽喜怒之常。応感起物而動、然後心術形焉」〔人には霊知や血液・気息循環の恒常的生理に加え、絶えず変化してやまない喜怒哀楽の感情があって、それが外物に触れても動き、心が現れる〕」とあったことも参考される。

古代儒教が宋学を経てなおひたすら命題とし続ける、制御しがたい「情欲——心」に捉われた人間存在の根源的な問題性、深刻さこそが(注13)「世の中にある人ことわざしげき物なれば」という言説を支えているのだと知られる。

注

2 本稿は、講演時の原稿をもとに簡略化したものを掲載してある。なお、より詳しい内容については、渡辺秀夫「詩歌の発生論と〈型〉——古今集序の理解をめぐって——」(『古代文学』50号・2010年3月)参照。
3 「和漢比較のなかの古今集両序—和歌勅撰の思想」(『国語国文』69–11・2000年11月)、「(うのちから)天地鬼神を動かすもの——「礼楽」と「歌」」(『国語と国文学』79–5・2002年5月)、「古今和歌集序の文学史—和歌勅撰と『礼楽』」(『古今和歌集研究集成 第1巻 古今和歌集の生成と本質』風間書房・2004年)。
4 興膳宏『古今集序覚書』は、出典・材源論が辞句間の影響関係の指摘に留まることなく、さらに「辞句という素材を統括し組織だっててゆく大きなロゴスを、ほかならぬ中日の文学理論から見出す作業」こそが「今後に残された大きな課題」という(『中国の文学理論』筑摩書房・1988年・pp.404–410)。
5 人と天地・陰陽・五行の関わりについては、方立天『中国古代哲学 上・下』(『方立天文集』第5・6巻・中国人民大学出版社・2006年・北京)、康中乾『中国古代哲学史稿』(中国社会科学出版社・2009年・北京)参照。

6 「物」が「人心」を動かすという考え方は、西晋以来、鍾嶸前後の文章家たちにひろく共有されたものでもあり、この中国古代詩文における伝統表現の詳細については、李健『魏晋南北朝の感物美学』(中国社会科学出版社・2007年・北京)の専著がある。

7 『神道大系 論説編19 北畠親房下』(神道大系編纂会・1992年・pp.280-286)

8 新典社・1975年・第5巻pp.10-11・pp.188-189

9 『富士谷御杖集』(第3巻・思文閣・1989年・pp.45-46)

10 徳原茂実「古今集仮名序の『ことわざ』について」(『武庫川女子大学言語文化研究所年報』12・2001年)は、現行の諸注はおおよそ『ことわざ』とは人間が生きている限り遭遇せざるをえない事件やなさざるをえない行為であるという認識の中に収まるという。近現代の諸注はいずれも「こと＋わざ」＋「しげき」と分解するが、「ことわざしげきもの」(＝「不能無為、思慮易遷、哀楽相変」)として一連、一体のものとして捉えるべきものであろう。

11 折口信夫「古今和歌集かな序」(『全集ノート編12』・中央公論社・1978年)

12 築島裕『平安時代の漢文訓読語につきての研究』(東大出版会・1963年・p.149)

13 坂地拝子「心」と「理」をめぐる朱熹思想構造の研究』(汲古書院・2005年・p.37)は、朱熹の定論における「心は性情を統ぶ」の意味は、理気・天理人欲・是非・善悪・聖凡などの二項対立(聖人と非聖人の二元論)を掲げ、その両者を同時に見据え「工夫(学び)」しつつける主体としての「心」の働きの枢要性を位置づけたものとする。
English Summary of the Article

Hideo Watanabe

EARLY MODERN AND PRE-MODERN INTERPRETATIONS
OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE
INTRODUCTION TO KOKINSHŪ AND THE WAKA POETRY
DEVELOPMENT THEORY

In the interpretations of classical Japanese poetry there are explicit differences in approach between the early modern times and those previous. For there does exist a large discrepancy between the then, contemporary, and the now, modern values, a discrepancy that takes origin in different ways of thinking, different ideological stances. The effects of all those differences and divergences are often unclear and sometimes even misguided interpretations. The purpose of this article is to present some of the widely known and therefore undoubtedly accepted contemporary Japanese poetry theories and compare them with the explanations and interpretations originated in the Middle Ages and the early modern period. The main source of the analysis is the first imperial anthology of poetry, Kokinwakashū (Collection of Poems of Ancient and Modern Times, 905), and in particular the two poetry treaties – Kanajo (Introduction) written in Japanese and Manajo (Introduction) written in Chinese.

Key-words: waka, Kokinwakashū, Kanajo, Manajo, Ki no Tsurayuki, kindai, genkindai, kata
ELEMENTS OF “POSSIBLY CHINESE” ORIGIN IN SELECTED POEMS BY PRINCESS SHIKISHI (1149–1201)

Introduction

The idea of looking at poems by Princess Shikishi 式子内親王 (1149–1201) from the perspective of “Chinese” intertext and appropriation of Chinese poetic images originated in both this author’s research about this late-Heian 平安 (11th c.) female poet and a class in ancient Chinese poetry she had a chance to take at the University of Hawai‘i at Mānoa in fall 2011. The class was given by Professor David McCraw, to whom, as a student of Japanese literature, this author is indebted for sharing his deep knowledge about Chinese poetry.

Princess Shikishi’s poetry has been given much scholarly attention in Japan and also some in Western academia – there is an English translation of all her currently known poems by Satō Hiroaki 佐藤紘彰. Annotated editions of all her poems and numerous publications also deal with the subject of allusions and references to earlier poems in her poetry. Thanks to such research, it has become clear that the number of allusions to poetry from sandaishū 三代集, and especially Kokin

1 Even though this author occasionally uses the word “Chinese” to describe poetry from the Asian mainland from now on in this article, she will make a distinction between the ancient and modern meaning of “Chinese”. By using “Chinese”, this author does not mean poetry “originating in the modern Chinese nation”, but the poetry that originated on the Asian mainland and is currently often referred to as “Chinese poetry” due to the current geographical location of the People’s Republic of China.

2 Moreover, this author would like to thank the Japan Foundation Japanese Studies Fellowship program and the National Institute of Japanese Literature in Tokyo for their sponsorship and access to resources during the process of writing. Special thanks are directed to Mr. Thomas Daugherty from the University of Hawai‘i at Mānoa for comments and suggestions that have greatly improved this article.

Wakashū 古今和歌集⁴, in Princess Shikishi’s poetry is much more significant than allusions to yet older Japanese poems, e.g. from Man’yōshū 万葉集⁵,⁶. However, since she alluded to such a variety of earlier poems in her own work, it would be equally interesting to look at her poetry from a yet different angle; to examine whether Princess Shikishi might have read some mainland poetry and, intentionally or not (and consciously or not), incorporated some “possibly Chinese” elements into her own waka 和歌. One could also look at this topic from the perspective of the wakan 和漢 discourse, briefly discussed further on in this article, which had been at that time around for long enough to make it natural to use some images of mainland origin in waka. This author believes that mainland culture appropriated by the Japanese did create an intriguing cultural mix filtered through Japanese eyes and also Japanized many mainland poetic images.

The subject of Chinese intertext in Princess Shikishi’s poetry is not entirely new in the field of waka studies in Japan, since a few Japanese scholars, e.g. Nishiki Hitoshi 錦仁, Oda Gō 小田剛, Yoshizaki Keiko 吉崎桂子 and Akahane Shuku 赤羽淑 have published the results of their research⁷. However, they all focus mostly on the allusions to the Tang dynasty 唐朝 (618–907) poetics, occasionally “filtered” through Japanese literature, e.g. the famous Heian Period tale by Murasaki Shikibu 紫式部 – Genji Monogatari 源氏物語⁸, Wakan Rōeishū 和漢朗詠集⁹, and sometimes refer to Hakushi Monjū 白氏文集¹⁰ by the most widely known Táng poet in medieval Japan, Bo Juyi 白居易¹¹. Thus, even though some previous scholarship

---

⁴ Kinokawa Wakashū is the first chokusenshū. It was commissioned by Emperor Daigo 醍醐 (r. 897–930), and compiled by Ki no Tsurayuki 紀貫之 (872–945), Ki no Tomonori 紀友則 (ca. 900), Ōshikochi Mitsune 凡河内躬恒 (ca. 900) and Mibu Tadamine 壬生忠岑 (ca. 910). It consists of 20 books and contains 1,111 poems. See Ariyoshi 1982:209–211.
⁵ Man’yōshū (MYS, Collection of Ten Thousand Leaves, ca. 759–785) is the first private collection of Japanese poetry. It contains many different types and forms of Japanese poems, compiled probably by Otomo no Yakamochi 大伴家持 (717–785). See Ariyoshi 1982:598–600.
⁸ Genji Monogatari (The Tale of Genji, ca. 1008) is a tale that has been called the first great novel in world literature. It has an essentially simple plot, describing the life and loves of an erstwhile prince known, from his family name, as “the shining Genji”. See Nipponica 2012.
⁹ Wakan Rōeishū (Collection of Japanese and Chinese Poems for Singing, ca. 1013–1018) is a collection compiled by Fujiwara Kintō 藤原公任 (966–1041). It consists of about 800 poems, which are parts of Chinese poems written by the Chinese (mostly the Táng poetry 唐詩), kanzhi 漢詩 – Chinese poetry composed by the Japanese, and waka. See Ariyoshi 1982:715.
¹⁰ Hakushi Monjū (Collection of Poems by Bo Juyi, 824) is a collection of poems by the Táng poet named Bo Juyi (cf. note 11). It contains ca. 3,000 poems and was very popular in the Heian Period (8–12th c.). Appropriation of the Táng poetry, and especially of Bo Juyi is notable in Genji Monogatari by Murasaki Shikibu and Makura no Sōshi 枕草子 (The Pillow Book, ca. 1001) by Sei Shōnagon 齊藤清少納言 (ca.966-ca.1025). See Nipponica 2012.
¹¹ Bo Juyi (Jap. Hakurakuten 白楽天, 772–846) was a poet of the Táng dynasty who worked as a government official, governor in various provinces, and was exiled. Many of his poems deal
on the subject exists, it does not cover all significant and intriguing aspects of it, e.g. appropriation of earlier than Tang poetry – images possibly domesticated as “traditionally Japanese”, and the later Song dynasty 宋朝 (960–1279) poetry. Moreover, the subject has not been researched by a non-Japanese scholar yet, so this is a chance for a new and hopefully broader interpretation.

Thus, this author attempts to track down some elements of “possibly Chinese” origin in the poems of Princess Shikishi, who seems to be a good object of such analysis, since she was a highborn aristocrat who had access to the best poetic education available at that time. Moreover, she was acquainted with Fujiwara Shunzei 藤原俊成12 and Fujiwara Teika 藤原定家13, poets of the Mikohidari house 御子左家 who were the two most respected and innovative waka poets of their era, possibly also incorporating some early Japanese and foreign poetics into their poems. There too is a strong implication that Princess Shikishi was in fact Shunzei’s disciple in waka14. Her poems are believed to be innovative for her era, thus, it would be desirable to find the sources of Chinese intertext in her poems, especially since the Kujō 九条 house’s members, who were patrons to the Mikohidari poetic house, apparently possessed extensive knowledge about Chinese literature15. That was perhaps the channel through which the Mikohidari house was able to access Chinese poetry, since it is known that Shunzei highly valued mainland poetics, too. In fact, during Chūgūnosuke Shigeie Uta’awase 中宮亮重家歌合 (The Assistant Master of the Empress Shigeie’s Poetry Match, 1166) Shunzei praised traditional Japanese poetics of the MYS, and Bo Juyi’s Hakushi Monjū. It is also believed that after this poetry contest there was another wave of interest in Chinese poetry and Wakan Rōeishū among Japanese aristocrats and poets16.

with subjects related to the politics of the court and Bo’s direct experiences. He was famous in Japan already during his lifetime and it was believed that his poems were widely appropriated in the literature of the Heian Period. See Shimura 2011:309–310.

12 Fujiwara Shunzei (or Toshinari, 1114–1204) was a poet, critic, and arbiter of waka. Compiler of the seventh of the imperial anthologies of classical Japanese poetry, Senzai Wakashū 千載和歌集 (SZS, Collection of Thousand Years, 1183). Father of Fujiwara Teika (1162–1241), with whom he managed to establish the most powerful family of poets and scholars of waka – the Mikohidari. See Ariyoshi 1982:312–313.

13 Fujiwara Teika (or Sadaie, 1162–1241) was a waka poet, critic, editor, and scholar. He was one of six compilers of the eighth imperial collection, Shinkokin Wakashū 新古今和歌集 (SKKS, New Collection of Japanese Poems from Ancient and Modern Times, 1205), and sole compiler of the ninth, Shinchokusen Wakashū 新勅撰和歌集 (SCSS, New Imperial Collection, 1235). See Ariyoshi 1982:459–461.

14 It is also widely known that Shunzei’s poetic treatise entitled Korai Fūteishō 古来風体抄 (Poetic Styles of Past and Present, 1197) was dedicated to Princess Shikishi. It is believed that Mikohidari house poets’ close relationship with Princess Shikishi was motivated among other things by their relatively low social status. By associating with the members of the Imperial family, the Mikohidari house members could upgrade their position at court. See Murai 1993:24–31.


16 Yoshizaki 2001:122.
The question arises as to what types of Chinese intertext are found in Princess Shikishi’s poems, and what the channels of such intertext were. Another important issue is the presence and significance of the *wakan* discourse in her poems. In order to address those questions, Princess Shikishi’s biography and some information about her poetry are presented briefly, along with issues related to the *wakan* discourse, which are considered significant for this article, and discussed. Finally, this author translates and analyzes four poetic examples by Princess Shikishi in an attempt to find some “possibly Chinese” intertext outside the Tang poetics.

I. Princess Shikishi and her poetry

Princess Shikishi was the third daughter of Emperor Go-Shirakawa 後白河17, so by birth she was a *naishinnō* 内親王 (princess of blood). It is debatable when exactly she was born, but most scholars claim ca. 1150, whereas Murai Shunji 村井俊司 argues precisely for 1149.18 At the age of nine or ten, Princess Shikishi was appointed to serve as a *sai’in* 斎院 (high priestess)19 at the Kamo Jinja 賀茂神社 20 in Kyoto and remained so for ten years until 1169 when she resigned, likely due to an illness. Probably during the 1190’s she took vows and became a Buddhist nun with the acquired name Shōnyohō 承如法21. Not much is known about her life after she retired from the *sai’in* post but it has been confirmed in both the *Meigetsuki* 明月記22 by Fujiwara Teika and the *Minamoto Ienaga Nikki* 源家長日記23 by Minamoto Ienaga24 that she

17 Emperor Go-Shirakawa (1127–1192) was the 77th emperor of Japan, who ruled 1155–1158. He was deeply interested in *waka*, and as a retired emperor ordered Fujiwara Shunzei to compile *Senzai Wakashū*. See Ariyoshi 1982:219.

18 His theory seems correct, since in 1150 another child was born to Emperor Go-Shirakawa, namely Princess Shikishi’s younger brother from the same mother – Prince Shukaku 守覚法親王 (1150–1202). See Murai 2000:824.

19 Sai’in was a female relative to the Emperor, often a princess of blood, who served as a high priestess at the Kamo Shrines in Kyoto.

20 *Kamo Jinja* (Kamo Shrines) are two independent but closely associated Shinto shrines in Kyoto – *Kamigamo Jinja* 上賀茂神社 and *Shimogamo Jinja* 下賀茂神社. According to the tradition of the Kamo Shrines, they were built at their present locations in 678, although their origins are said to go back to the reign of the legendary first Emperor of Japan – Jimmu 神武.

21 Sato 1993:5.

22 *Meigetsuki* (Diary of the Bright Moon, 1180–1235) is a diary by Fujiwara Teika written in classical Chinese. It covers many years of Teika’s life and it is highly valued as a source for information about the court society of that period and as a historical source. See Ariyoshi 1982:633.

23 *Minamoto Ienaga Nikki* (Diary of Minamoto Ienaga, 1211–1221) is a diary by Minamoto Ienaga. It is considered to be one of the best sources of information on the SKKS compilation. See Ariyoshi 1982:26.

24 Minamoto no Ienaga (ca. 1173–1234) was a courtier whom Retired Emperor Go-Toba 後鳥羽 (1180–1239) appointed as a *kaikō* 開闔 (recording secretary) in the *Wakadokoro* 和歌所 (Bureau of Poetry). See Ariyoshi 1982:26.
changed places of residence numerous times, lived in seclusion and eventually died at the beginning of 1201.\footnote{Imamura 1995:81–83.}

The corpus of Princess Shikishi’s poetry is unfortunately not as extensive as Teika’s – ca. 4,600 poems, or even Shunzei’s – ca. 2,600 poems; only about 400 of Princess Shikishi’s poems have survived to date. Japanese scholars have been giving different numbers of her existing poems, e.g. Yamasaki Keiko \footnote{Yamasaki 1978:11.} – 400, Okuno Yōko \footnote{Okuno 2001:3–9.} – 400, Oda Gō \footnote{Oda 1995b:3.} – 407, and Nishiki Hitoshi \footnote{Nishiki 2001:124.} – 416. Kunishima Akie \footnote{Kunishima 1993:16.} estimated that Princess Shikishi probably composed about 2,600 poems during her lifetime.\footnote{Yasuda 1975:253.}

The majority of her poems are composed in three \textit{hyakushu} 百首 sequences consisting of a hundred pieces of \textit{tanka} 短歌 (short poem), a form adopted during the reign of Emperor Horikawa 堼河.\footnote{Emperor Horikawa (1079–1107) was the 73rd emperor of Japan according to the traditional order of succession; reigned 1086–1107. He was deeply interested in \textit{waka}. His \textit{Horikawa Hyakushu} 堼河百首 (One Hundred Poems for Emperor Horikawa, 1105–1106) is considered to be one of the most important poetic events of the era. See Ariyoshi 1982:577.} Satō Hiroaki claims that the rest of Shikishi’s poems were taken from similar sequences, which have been lost.\footnote{Satō 1993:16.} The dates of creation of those three \textit{hyakushu} sequences, commonly called the A sequence, the B sequence, and the C sequence, remain an object of argument. Kunishima claims that the A sequence was composed about 1169; that is, just after Princess Shikishi retired from the \textit{sai’in} post, as one of her poems from this sequence included in \textit{Shinkokin Wakashū} 新古今和歌集, is signed as \textit{Zensai’in no Gohyakushu} 前斎院御百首 (Hundred-poem Sequence by the Former High Priestess of the Kamo Shriners).\footnote{Yamasaki 1978:11–12.} Other scholars argue for a much later date of about 1194 but Yamasaki, on the other hand, claims that this sequence was composed in 1188.\footnote{Ibid., 12.} She emphasizes that none of the poems from the A sequence are included in the \textit{Senzai Wakashū} 新斎和歌集.
千載和歌集\(^{38}\) compiled by Fujiwara Shunzei\(^{39}\). Taking into account Shikishi’s close relationship to Shunzei and significant position he already possessed in the poetic world at that time, it is unlikely that the A sequence had not attracted his attention, especially since nine of her later poems are included in this imperial collection\(^{40}\). The B sequence is usually believed to have been created about 1187–1194\(^{41}\), although Yamasaki is convinced that it was rather 1194\(^{42}\), whereas the C sequence was composed in 1200 at the order of Retired Emperor Go-Toha 後鳥羽\(^{43}\),\(^{44}\). In the entry from the 5\(^{th}\) day of the 9\(^{th}\) month of the 2\(^{nd}\) year of the Shōji era (1200) of Meigetsuki, Fujiwara Teika describes this hyakushu sequence by Princess Shikishi as follows: 皆以神妙 (all of the pieces are divine)\(^{45}\), which indicates that he had a lot of respect and admiration for her poetic ability. This last sequence is especially significant due to the fact that seventy tanka were selected for inclusion in the imperial anthologies, with SKKS containing twenty-five of them.

Yamasaki divides Shikishi’s poetry into four sequences\(^{46}\), the fourth of which he calls the D sequence and describes it as 雖入勅撰不見家集歌 (Poems Not Found in the Personal Collections Though Selected for Imperial Anthologies)\(^{47}\). Some Japanese scholars followed Yamasaki’s division of Shikishi’s poetry into four sequences but the most frequent practice is the acknowledgement of 300 pieces as three hyakushu sequences, and other poems included in various poetic collections.

Despite the limited size of her current poetic corpus, Princess Shikishi happens to be the one who, among a handful of well-respected women poets of her age\(^{48}\),

\(^{38}\) Senzai Wakashū (cf. note 12) is the seventh imperial anthology of Japanese poetry compiled by Fujiwara Shunzei at the order of Emperor Go-Shirakawa. It has been emphasized that many private poetic collections were sources for this imperial collection, and that poetry of contemporary poets was given special attention. See Ariyoshi 1982:377–378.

\(^{39}\) Yamasaki 1978:12.

\(^{40}\) Ibid., 12–13.

\(^{41}\) Satō 1993:17.

\(^{42}\) Yamasaki 1978:11.

\(^{43}\) Go-Toha (1180–1239) was the 82\(^{nd}\) emperor of Japan according to the traditional order of succession, reigned 1183–1198. Go-Toha composed waka himself and in 1201, already as a retired emperor, became the host of many poetic events and eventually ordered the SKKS compilation, which is considered to be his biggest contribution to Japanese literature. He is believed to have maintained a good balance between the two rivaling poetic schools of the era – Rokujō 六條和 Mikohidari. See Ariyoshi 1982:227–228.

\(^{44}\) Go-Toha ordered this hyakushu sequence from many poets, e.g. Fujiwara Teika, Jien 慈円 (cf. note 53), Jakuren, Kujō Yoshitsune 九条義綱 (cf. note 52), Prince Shukaku (cf. note 18), etc. The event was named Shōji Ninen In Shodo Hyakushu 正治二年院初度百首 (Retired Emperor’s First Hundred-Poem Sequence of the Second Year of the Shōji Era, 1200) and was one of the sources of poems for the SKKS compilation. See Ariyoshi 1982:321.

\(^{45}\) Teika 1974:119.

\(^{46}\) Yamasaki 1978:11.

\(^{47}\) Ibid., 17.

\(^{48}\) There were other female poets, whose poetic abilities started to be highly valued during the early 1200’s, e.g. Shunzei no Musume 俊成女 (1171?–1252?), Kojīju 小侍従 (?), etc.
seemed to stand out in the evaluation of her male counterparts. Forty-nine of her poems are included in SKKS, which is the fifth greatest number of waka by one author in the said collection, and the greatest amount of poems by a female poet. Moreover, in the poetic treatise Go-Toba-in Gokuden 後鳥羽院御口伝⁴⁹, Retired Emperor Go-Toba evaluated Shikishi’s poetry in the following manner:

近き世にとりては、大炊御門前斎院・故中御門摂政・吉水大僧正、これこれ、殊勝なり。斎院はことにもみもみとあるやうに詠まれき。⁵⁰

When we come to more recent times, among the outstanding poets are the Former Imperial Virgin of Ōimikado, the late Nakanomikado Regent and the Former Archbishop Yoshimizu. The Imperial Virgin composed in a very polished and ingenious style⁵¹.

Go-Toba mentions Princess Shikishi (as the Former Imperial Virgin of Ōimikado) together with such valued poets of the era as Kujō Yoshitsune 九条良経⁵² (Nakanomikado Regent) and Jien 慈円⁵³ (Former Archbishop Yoshimizu). He also describes her poetry with the expression momimomi もみもみ, which is difficult to define⁵⁴, but Go-Toba used it also in regard to Teika’s poem, which would indicate a high evaluation of her style.

Princess Shikishi’s life is frequently interpreted as one full of sacrifices, seclusion and constant solitude. The question arises whether this assumption is based only on her biography, or perhaps an image created by conventional waka poetics⁵⁵, by

⁴⁹ Go-Toba-in Gokuden (Secret Teachings of Retired Emperor Gotoba, 1208–1212) is a poetic treatise by Retired Emperor Go-Toba, in which he evaluates work of many earlier and contemporary Japanese poets. See Ariyoshi 1982:225.
⁵² Kujō Yoshitsune (1169–1206) was a son of Kujō Kanezane 九条兼実 (1149–1207) – sesshō 摂政 (regent to minor emperor) and kampaku 関白 (regent to an adult emperor) to Emperor Go-Toba in 1186–1191. Yoshitsune served as a sesshō to Emperor Tsuchimikado 土御門 (1195–1231) in 1202–1206. He was also Jien’s nephew. From a young age he composed Chinese and Japanese poems, and later became the host of many important poetic events, e.g. Roppayakuban Uta’awase 六百番歌合 (Poetry Contest in Six Hundred Rounds, 1192–1193). He was a patron to the Mikohidari poetic house and is the third best represented poet in SKKS. See Ariyoshi 1982:672–673.
⁵³ Jien (1155–1225) was a poet, historian and Buddhist monk, one of the SKKS compilers. Kujō Kanezane and Jien were brothers from the same mother. He was a highly valued poet of his era, and the second best represented poet in the SKKS. See Ariyoshi 1982:672–673.
⁵⁴ According to Brower: “elegant beauty conveyed by a highly wrought poetic conception and complex poetic texture—not a spontaneous or impromptu style”. See Brower 1972:57.
⁵⁵ Gotō Shōko 後藤祥子 points out that by looking at Princess Shikishi’s love poetry without taking into consideration the fact that she was a woman, and focusing on the context of the long history of love poetry already existing during her lifetime, opens up new possibilities of reading her poems from the contemporary perspective. Gotō emphasizes that Shikishi’s love poems are
Princess Shikishi as a poet herself, by people surrounding her, and by a later process of medievalization, which mythicized and legendarized the lives of many Japanese poets. A considerable number of her poems included in the SKKS (49) and the Retired Emperor Gotoba’s evaluation of her poetry quoted above prove that in her own age Princess Shikishi was perceived mostly as a great poet, and not necessarily the lonely, “waiting woman”. Thus, in the analysis of Princess Shikishi’s poems the author relies on an assumption that she was a semi-professional poet highly valued for her poetic abilities by her contemporaries, which means that she composed poems according to the expectations of the poetic conventions of her time while additionally applying some innovations, and not necessarily deriving poetic inspirations from her personal life. However, she might have (intentionally or not) participated in the process of creating her own image as a recluse through traditional poetics that have been misinterpreted into the image of the “waiting woman”, which hopefully becomes clear in the analysis of her poems containing “possibly Chinese” elements.

II. Wakan as a traditional literary discourse in Japan

The so-called wakan discourse, literally translatable as “Japan and China”, has been known in Japan at least since the compilation of Wakan Rōeishū in 1013–1018. There are many Japanese academicians who have dealt with this subject matter but the author would like to refer to three contemporary Western scholars representing different but important approaches to this concept: 1) Thomas LaMarre, 2) David Pollack, and 3) Ivo Smits.

---

56 Based on Susan Matisoff’s research on Semimaru’s 蝉丸 (early Heian Period) legend, one observes that medieval era people learned about “high” aristocratic culture through “low” literature and drama. Legends about earlier poets developed with time, and while some facts about them remain true, much information is added to attract the attention of the medieval and later audiences. See Matisoff 2006:XI-XIX. The image of Princess Shikishi was also medievalized, largely due to her image in a no 能 play attributed to Komparu Zenchiku 金春禅竹 (1405–1471) entitled Teika Kazura 定家葛. In this play, she is presented as a mad woman, who had been once in love with Fujiwara Teika, but cannot detach herself from the world and love.

57 It has also been suggested that due to Princess Shikishi’s social position as a member of the Imperial family, she was unlikely to be perceived as a woman, but rather as an Imperial persona by her contemporaries, among others Fujiwara Teika. Shikishi and Teika maintained a relatively close relationship based to a large extent on their passion for waka and no sign of their love affair may be found in historical sources. See Imamura 1995:76.

58 Nishiki 1992:149 claims that in comparison to other women poets of her time, Princess Shikishi’s tanka contains relatively many allusions to Chinese poetry.

59 E.g. Fujikawa Masakazu 藤川正数, Tanaka Masakazu 田中雅和, Hara Ei’ichi 原栄一, Okamura Shigeru 岡村繁, Miki Masahiro 三木雅博, Yanagisawa Ryōichi 柳沢良一, etc.
LaMarre understands *wakan* as a stylistic distinction and different registers used at the court: *kana* 仮名 and *mana* 真名. He considers Chinese poetry formal (appropriate for public presentation) and Japanese poetry informal (appropriate in private situations). Moreover, he claims that due to the existence of those distinctions, Japan consciously distinguished itself from China and other “states” of that time. On the other hand, Pollack defines *wakan* as placing elements of both Japanese and Chinese cultures in some sort of relationship to each other. He also emphasizes that those do not have to stand in mutual opposition and claims that certain Chinese elements were intentionally incorporated in Japanese culture to serve as a foreign, glittering and impressive background, e.g. Japanese characters *kana* written on Chinese paper, or Chinese themes and tales used as a more colorful archetype against which Japanese heroes would stand out due to the contrast created by emphasizing the similarities to and differences between the two cultures. Yet another opinion has been expressed by Smits, who points out that *wakan* had been more of a cultural interaction between Japan and China, or rather between Japan and Japanese visions of China. Moreover, he emphasizes that collections like *Wakan Rōeishū* demonstrate how Japanese poets appropriated Chinese literature and how they combined both languages, creating an almost bilingual culture. Smits thinks that Kintō’s aim by compiling *Wakan Rōeishū* was to integrate Japanese and Chinese poetry to create a “harmonious whole”. However, the most convincing argument that Smits makes about *wakan* is the selectivity of the appropriation the Japanese obviously made in regard to Chinese culture. He emphasizes that Kintō was very selective about the poets and poems he included in *Wakan Rōeishū*, e.g. he completely omitted poems of Tu Fu 杜甫 and other famous Chinese poets of his own time. Ultimately, Bo Juyi is the best represented poet in this poetic collection, which, together with the significance of *Hakushi Monjū* for, among others, the Mikohidari poets, remains crucial for the appropriation of Chinese poetics in the medieval period.

There are many other interpretations and definitions of *wakan*; the three mentioned above, however, are probably the most significant for the area of medieval Japanese literature and the subject matter of this article. LaMarre’s idea about stylistic distinction is significant, even though he refers only to the registers. The author

---

60 LaMarre 2000:26–49.
63 Ibid., 226.
64 Tu Fu (Jap. To Ho, 712–770) was a poet of the Tang dynasty. He was initially not very well known but eventually became famous in China and Japan. He has been frequently called the “poet-historian” by Chinese critics. See Shimura 2011:272–274.
of this article would go one step further and allow the existence of those stylistic
distinctions in the poetics and poetic styles of Japanese poets, many of whom read
mainland poetry and composed poems on Chinese subjects. Pollack’s definition is
important since it allows the Chinese intertext to be a background, not the core,
of Japanese appropriation of mainland culture. This author’s scholarly approach to
the idea of wakan is, however, closest to the one represented by Smits, since the
level of selectivity, no matter if readers are aware or not of whatever was conside-
red “Chinese” by the Japanese in the Heian Period and medieval era, is a significant
factor for the analysis of Princess Shikishi’s poetry. Moreover, even though Pollack
also briefly mentions it in his book, only Smits clearly emphasizes that wakan is
not a foreign, but a local or domestic Japanese process of appropriation of Chi-
nese or mainland culture, not a forceful influence imposed on Japan from abroad.
The channels of mainland culture and literature’s appropriation in Japan were thus
already established by the Japanese themselves in the Heian Period.

III. Tracking the “Chinese”:
an analysis of selected poems by Princess Shikishi

The process of searching “possibly Chinese” elements in the poetry of Prin-
cess Shikishi is not an easy task. The reason is that by the second half of the 12th c.
a lot of the Chinese or mainland culture had been already appropriated in Japan,
and by that time probably believed to be either Japanese, or domesticated Chinese.
However, the analysis presented in this article and its results demonstrate that both
domesticated Chinese elements and intentional allusions to Chinese poetry may
be found in Princess Shikishi’s poems.

This author believes that studying “around and about” waka, which indicates
the necessity of taking into account as much secondary information (circumstances
of poems’ composition, poetic style characteristics for a given poet, poetic styles
fashionable during the time of composition, the existence of the given era’s poetic
discourse, etc.) as possible, is equally important as the analysis of the poems. This
is in fact related to the concept of intertextuality. Julia Kristeva, for whom interte-
xtuality is a key concept, claims: “a text cannot exist as a hermetic or self-sufficient
whole, and so does not function as a closed system”67, since writers are first of all
readers of other texts that influence them during their activity of writing. Thus,
texts written and read by authors are all politically and emotionally charged, which
influences everybody’s perception of them. Both Kristeva and Mihkail Bakhtin, who
also wrote extensively about intertextuality, argue that due to the reasons described
above even discursive practices themselves are intertextual, since they influence

the texts too. Based on such definition of intertextuality one may conclude that authors and readers should accept and recognize the inevitable intertextuality of their activities of writing, reading and participating in the discourse. This is the academic approach to the concept of intertextuality and studying Japanese poetry that the author follows in this article.

3.1. 詠むれば衣手すずし久方のあまの河原の秋の夕ぐれ

*nagamureba* When I utter poems gazing [out]

*koromode suzusi* My sleeves are chilly.

*fisakata no* An autumn evening

*ama no kafara no* Of the Heavenly River

*a ki no yufugure*69 In the eternal and strong sky

(the A sequence, autumn no. 38)70.

It is perhaps surprising that an image of the Heavenly River, common in Japanese poetry from even before the compilation of MYS, where it is found in numerous poems, is analyzed as “possibly Chinese”. In fact, three major annotators of Princess Shikishi’s poems – Nishiki, Okuno and Oda – do not analyze this poem from the perspective of Chinese intertext, and they all give numerous poetic examples by poets who were Shikishi’s contemporaries, e.g. one of the compilers of SKKS, Jakuren 寂蓮 (?–1202), or the third shogun of the Kamakura shogunate, Minamoto Sanetomo 源実朝 (1192–119), whose poetry teacher was Fujiwara Teika. But in many cases, one is unable to prove whose poem was composed first. Moreover, even though Nishiki gives as a reference a MYS poem – X: 2319:

暮去者衣袖寒之高松之山木毎雪曽零有
ゆふさればころもでさむしたかまつのやまのきごとにゆきそふりたる71

*yufu sareba* When evening arrives

*koromode samusi* My sleeves are cold.


69 This author decided not to transcribe but to transliterate the poems based on a system of Heian Japanese codified by John R. Bentley. This transliteration exposes consonant repetitions that the Hepburn system obscures, and thus reveals the phonological features of Classical Japanese. This system is not applied to Japanese names and titles of poetry collections, since their transcriptions in the Hepburn system are widely acknowledged in academia. All translations of poems from Classical Japanese and Classical Chinese are the author’s (done with the great help of Professor Alexander Vovin from the University of Hawai‘i at Mānoa), unless it is indicated otherwise.

70 The poem was also included in SKKS as no. 321.

it is by all means not an obvious allusion, since there are numerous poems in MYS, especially in Book X, that contain similar vocabulary.

Oda follows Nishiki’s references but Okuno claims Princess Shikishi might refer to another MYS poem – X: 2093, which is probable, since the river-crosser is female and it is the man who waits for his beloved\(^72\):

\[
\text{妹爾相時片待跡久方乃天之漢原尓月叙経来}\ \\
\text{いもにあふときかたまつとひさかたのあまのかはらにつきぞへにける}\ ^73
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{imo ni afu} & \quad \text{When I wait yearningly} \\
\text{toki katamatu to} & \quad \text{To meet with my beloved,} \\
\text{fisakata no} & \quad \text{At the Heavenly River} \\
\text{ama no kafara ni} & \quad \text{Of the eternal and strong sky} \\
\text{tuki zo fenikeru} & \quad \text{The moon wanes down.}
\end{align*}
\]

Whichever reference is correct, just the fact that the time of the appropriation was early enough to have been present already in the orally transmitted songs in Japan and then recorded in MYS poetry does not exclude the possibility of Chinese intertext’s existence. Actually, not only the image of the Heavenly River, but the whole ancient mainland legend about the Weaver and Cow-Herder became appropriated in the Japanese Isles. The Heavenly River and the Tanabata Festival, currently celebrated on July 7\(^{th}\), are in Japanese poetry the only toponyms symbolizing an old mainland legend. Even though it cannot be considered to be a direct intertext, the image of crossing the river in ancient Chinese poetry may be found already in poems of the \textit{Shi Jing} \(^74\), e.g. the first poem in this collection, the \textit{Guan Sui} 關雎 (Go Fish Hawk):

\[
\text{關關雎鳩在河之洲} \quad \text{Guan guan go the fish hawks on the river bank}
\]

\(^72\) In Western Old Japanese \textit{imo} means ‘beloved’ and refers to a woman. One also observes that \textit{tuki} (moon) surprisingly symbolizes a woman in this MYS poem. Only later in Japanese poetry the moon started to be associated with the symbolism of a man visiting a woman.

\(^73\) Cf. \textit{Shinpen kokka taikan} 2003.

\(^74\) \textit{Shi Jing} (Jap. Shikyō, The Book of Songs, before 6\(^{th}\) c. BC) is the oldest existing collection of Chinese poetry. It comprises 305 anonymous poems and songs dating from the 10\(^{th}\) to the 7\(^{th}\) century BC. There exist many different manuscripts of this collection. \textit{See Nipponica} 2012.
窈窕淑女君子好逑\(^{75,76}\) An elegant, virtuous lady is a good match for our lord (…),

and also in no. 9, the Han Guang 漢廣 (Breadth of the Han River), where a young woman crossing the river symbolizes marriage,

漢之廣矣不可泳思 \(^{77}\) (…) the breadth of the Han River cannot be swam through.

江之永矣不可方思\(^{77}\) The length of the Jiang River cannot be measured (…).

Such symbolism of the Heavenly River in Japan was partially preserved only in the legend of the Weaver and Cow-Herder, where it is the woman, not the man, who crosses the river and is thus an active element.

In this poem by Princess Shikishi one surprisingly finds both the image of the Heavenly River, traditionally symbolizing a young woman crossing the river in order to get married, and an image of the “waiting woman”. In fact the verb nagamu, here a kakekotoba 掛詞 (pivot word) and a pun on ‘to say poems’ and ‘to gaze out’, suggests that the speaker of the poem is a lonely woman gazing out at something from the window or veranda of her house. Her solitude is also emphasized by the image of cold sleeves\(^{78}\). In fact, a lonely woman constantly awaiting her husband is also an archetype appropriated from Chinese poetry. Already in the war poems of the Shi Jing, e.g. in no. 31, the Ji Gu 擊鼓 (Beating of the Drums), written from the perspective of soldiers, one finds an image of wives waiting for their husbands at home:

死生契闊與子成說 \(^{79}\) (…) even if separated, for life or death to our wives

執子之手與子偕老\(^{79}\) we pledged to hold their hands and grow old together (…).

\(^{75}\) Cf. Shi Jing 1998.

\(^{76}\) This author decided not to romanize poems in Classical Chinese since the language and readings of Chinese characters have been changing over time. Thus, romanization of Chinese poems in Mandarin, which are utilized as only supportive evidence of various layers of intertext, would not contribute anything to the subject of this article.

\(^{77}\) Cf. Shi Jing 1998.

\(^{78}\) Sleeves are frequently used in Japanese poetry as an erotic image. Wide sleeves of aristocratic garments were used by aristocrats as pillows; in Japanese poetry sleeping on each other’s sleeves is a symbol of an intimate situation or even sexual intercourse. Here cold sleeves symbolize loneliness, since there is nobody to warm them up.

\(^{79}\) Cf. Shi Jing 1998.
It is unclear who, if anybody, crosses the river in Shikishi’s poem. Taking into consideration the perspective of the “waiting woman”, one could conclude that the Chinese image of a young lady crossing the river is reversed, since it is the woman who awaits her husband at home. On the other hand, by gazing out of her house and looking at the Heavenly River, the woman “travels across the sky” in order to become spiritually unified with her husband, so she is not only the “waiting woman”, but also the lady crossing the Heavenly River. If one goes further on with an interpretation of this poem as a spiritual journey, one should also take into consideration the *Chu Ci* poems from the south, where one finds a number of songs about spiritual journeys and quests for immortality, which immediately bring to mind Daoism and its emphasis on self-cultivation and personal development.

Colors are another interesting feature of this poem. The red sky does not necessarily surprise as an autumn image in *waka*, since *aki no yufugure* is traditionally always red and autumn is usually considered to be a season of loneliness and waiting. The red color in the sky could thus symbolize the obviousness and visibility of the woman’s love feelings, or even sexual desire. In fact, one also finds the red color as a symbol of marriage and desire already in the *Shi Jing*, e.g. in poem no. 10, the *Ru Fen* (Banks of the Ru River):

魴魚赪尾王室如燬

(…) the bream reddens its tail, the Royal Hall is as if blazing.

雖則如燬父母孔邇

Even if it is as if blazing, your parents are near.

This fits perfectly with the image of a lady who feels deep sexual desire and tries to cross the river in order to become married. In any case, while it is doubtful that this poem by Princess Shikishi directly alludes to spiritual journeys similar to the quests for immortality present in the Chu poetry, the themes of the “waiting woman” and lady crossing the river are undeniable old mainland images. This poem is thus an example of relatively early mainland images appropriated and re-interpreted in *waka*.

If this author were to point out channels through which Princess Shikishi appropriates Chinese images in this poem, the references different from those indicated

---

80 *Chu Ci* (Jap. *Soji*, Songs of Chu, ca. 340–270 BC) is a collection of poems traditionally attributed to Qu Yuan (339 BC–278 BC) and Song Yu (3rd c. BC) from the Warring States Period (ca. 476 BC–221 BC). The traditional version of the *Chu Ci* contains seventeen major sections. See *Nipponica* 2012.

81 Daoism or Taoism is an indigenous religio-philosophical tradition originated on the Asian mainland that emphasizes living in harmony with the Dao 道. The term Dao means ‘way’, ‘path’ or ‘principle’ and indicated something that is both the source and the driving force behind all existence.

by Japanese scholars would be suggested. This poem contains similar vocabulary
to two poems by Yūshi Naishinnō-ke no Kii 祐子内親王家紀伊83 from the Horikawa Hyakushu 堀河百首, nos. 536 and 799:

秋のたつしるしなるべし衣手に涼しきけしきことになりゆく84

| aki no tatu | It is clear that |
| sirusi naru besi | The autumn rises. |
| koromode mo | Even the sleeves |
| suzusiki kesiki | Are chilly and the view |
| koto ni nariyuku | Will become unusual. |

久かたの月をはるかにながむればやそ島めぐりみる心ちする85

| fisakata no | When from a great distance |
| tuki wo faruka ni | I gaze at the moon |
| nagamureba | Eternal and strong, |
| yaso sima meguri | I have a feeling that I go around |
| miru kokoti suru | And see numerous isles. |

This author believes that Princess Shikishi must have read the Horikawa Hyakushu, which was a frequent reference for the early medieval poets, e.g. Fujiwara Shunzei, and perhaps she played off poems by Yūshi Naishinnō-ke no Kii combining images from both of them. The reference to no. 799 is especially eye-catching since not only are the first and third lines similar, but also the second part of the poem supports the idea of a spiritual journey. If one allows this interpretation and takes into account the presence of images of the Heavenly River in the MYS, it is more probable that Shikishi appropriated “possibly Chinese” poetic imagery and vocabulary directly through the poems by Japanese poets rather than through Chinese poems, although one also observes many layers of “possibly Chinese” intertext in this poem by Princess Shikishi86.

83 Yūshi Naishinnō-ke no Kii was a court lady and poet of the late Heian Period. She served the daughter of Emperor Go-Suzaku 後朱雀 (1009–1045), Princess Yūshi 祐子内親王 (1038–1105), who was a host to many poetry contests and had her own poetic salon. Also, she participated in many poetic events of her era and was invited to compose a sequence for the famous Horikawa Hyakushu. See Ariyoshi 1982: 663.
84 Cf. Shinpen kokka taikan 2003.
85 Ibid.
86 It is worth mentioning that besides images appropriated from early Chinese poetry, there is an interesting mixture of traditional Japanese poetics and new poetic techniques of the SKKS era. Fisakata no is a makura kotoba 枕詞 (fixed epithet that modifies the following noun) found already in MYS, but the last line aki no yufugure seems to be a typical SKKS expression. There is
3.2. 色つぼむ梅の木の間の夕月夜春の光をみせそむるかな

| iro tubomu | In between |
| mume no ko no ma no | The plum trees sprouting in color |
| yufudkukuyo | It is the evening moon |
| faru no fikari wo | That hues revealing |
| misesomuru kana | The light of spring |

(the A sequence, spring no. 3).

This is another poem by Princess Shikishi in which one observes an appropriation of early Chinese poetry images, namely the plum blossoms and moonlight. Similarly to the previous poem, the annotators of Shikishi’s poems do not analyze it from the point of view of Chinese intertext. Nishiki, Okuno and Oda all point out a few references from imperial anthologies, but it is a poem from SZS, no. 24 by Fujiwara Shunzei that might have been a channel through which Princess Shikishi appropriated the imagery:

はるの夜はのきばのむめをもる月のひかりもかをる心ちこそすれ

| faru no yo fa | During the spring night |
| nokiba no mume wo | I have a feeling that |
| moru tuki no | The moonlight seeping through |
| fikari no kaforu | The plum blossoms at the eaves |
| kokoti koso sure | Is also fragrant. |

The poem appears in SZS without any preface, so it is difficult to determine which poem, Shunzei’s or Shikishi’s, was composed first, and which could have been an inspiration for the other one. However, since Shunzei’s poem appears in a collection entitled Hōen no korohoi (In the time of Hōen era, 1185–1190) created in preparation for the compilation of SZS, this author assumes that it must have been a tanka composed early enough for Princess Shikishi to read it and, as Shunzei’s disciple, to become inspired by it.

also a taigendome 体現止 (substantive in the last line of the poem), a poetic technique characteristic for the SKKS poetics. Moreover, one finds the x-no-y-no-z pattern in ama no kafara no aki no yufgure, which is another poetic device characteristic for the SKKS style. Thus Princess Shikishi combined “the old and the new” in this poem, which – according to Fujiwara Shunzei and Fujiwara Teika’s ideal kotoba furuku, kokoro atarasi 言葉古く心新 (‘old words, new heart’), should be the trademark of the new poetic style.

88 The brilliance of white moonlight was particularly appreciated by the Six Dynasties 六朝 Period (220–589) poets.
Simultaneously, one should not forget that plum blossoms are a mainland poetic image found already in *Shi Jing*, e.g. poem no. 20, the *Biao You Mei* (Falling Plums), where images of plum blossoms and ripe fruits accompany the image of a beautiful young woman:

摽有梅其實七兮
求我庶士迨其吉兮

Plums are falling, the seventh of the fruits [are left].
To numerous gentlemen seeking me, this is a lucky time (…)

In *waka* plum blossoms appear in MYS, KKS and later imperial anthologies as a symbol of early spring, since plum trees bloom earlier than cherry trees, but it is a commonly known appropriation from the mainland poetics.

In this poem by Princess Shikishi, *mume* (plum) surely symbolizes the beginning of the spring season. However, even though this is a spring poem and there is no direct implication of any love theme and the speaker is not revealed directly, one may assume that the presented viewpoint is possibly of a woman standing under the plum tree and waiting for a man to admire her beauty and approach her. In fact, such reading would fit with the image from the *Biao You Mei*. *A makura kotoba* (fixed epithet) *yufudukuyo* (evening moon), in this poem modifying *faru no fikari* (light of spring), appears in spring and autumn poems in MYS, KKS, etc. and it often accompanies the theme of love and longing. Thus, if one takes into consideration the amorous implications of this image, through the symbolism of the ‘light of spring’, the evening moon could be revealing love or the beginning of a new relationship of a young beautiful woman additionally symbolized by the plum tree buds. If one allows this interpretation, the poem sounds surprisingly similar to one of the Ziye poems, namely the *Ye Chang Bu De Mian* (I Cannot Sleep During the Long Night), where a lady probably lies in darkness in her bed but she becomes exposed by the bright moon’s light falling on her:

夜長不得眠
明月何灼灼
想聞散喚聲

I cannot sleep during the long night
The bright moonlight is brilliant.
I believe I heard a calling voice

---

90 In Chinese paintings young women are often portrayed as standing under the blooming plum trees, since it was supposed to emphasize their beauty and purity. In fact, ripe plums falling from the tree symbolize sexual maturity and readiness of the “waiting woman” for marriage. This image probably originates from the *Shi Jing* poetics.

91 *Cf. Shi Jing* 1998.

92 *Yufudukuyo* is the evening moon, or specifically the waxing moon between first appearance and first quarter moon; it lingers in the twilight sky up to the 10th day of the lunar month.

93 Ziye poetry is very difficult to identify. It is not confirmed where it originated but it is some type of lyric poetry probably of the Kingdom of Wu (around today’s Nanjing) from ca. 4–5th c. Ziye poetry was imitated by 6th c. court Chinese poets.
The emptiness responded the air with a consent.

The moonlight thus clearly reveals woman’s desire. In fact, in this Ziye poem, the bright moon is a symbol of woman’s yearning. The exposure to the moonlight is similar in a tanka by Princess Shikishi, where one additionally finds plum blossoms symbolizing the lady’s readiness for love, marriage and sex.

It is fair to conclude that this poem should be read more as a poetic hint to something rather than literally, similar to the Ziye poem quoted above. In reality it is impossible that the moonlight seeps through the early spring plum buds when the surroundings are covered in darkness. Moonlight would not reveal any actual colors of plums, or other flowers, so whatever the speaker describes in this poem is rather not the color of plum blossoms, but the color of love or desire. Thus, originally Chinese natural images became appropriated in waka, which creates a deeper kind of intertext that covers not only a few references to earlier poems, e.g. Shunzei’s tanka that might have been the inspiration for Princess Shikishi, but also ages and layers of various images usage in both Chinese and Japanese poetry. As a result, the awareness of the Chinese intertext allows a transformation of this spring poem into a love poem.

3.3. さかづきに春の涙をそそきけりむかしににたる旅のまとゐに

sakaduki ni | Into my sake-cup
faru no namida wo | I have poured
sosokikeri | The tears of spring.
mukasi ni nitaru | Going astray from the journey
tabi no madowi ni | Resembling the past

This is a poem in which even the annotators of Princess Shikishi’s poems find Chinese intertext. Nikishi, Okuno and Oda all give three earlier possible references: 1) a part of Bo Juyi’s poem from the Hakushi Monjū vol. 17, no. 1107, composed when a friend came to visit the poet in exile:

---

95 The pink, or sometimes red color of the plum blossoms and its symbolism explained earlier in this article enforces this interpretation.
96 It is worth mentioning that the style of this poem is also a mixture of the “old and new poetics”. It contains the x-no-y-no-z pattern: mume no ko no ma, characteristic for the SKKS style, but it ends with the emphatic particle kana which resounds more the sandaishū style. Moreover, yufudukuyo can be found already in MYS and in this case represents older poetics.
elements of “possibly chinese” origin in selected poems by princess shikishi (1149–1201)

往事渺茫都似夢  (…) past events are distant and vague, all of them seem like a dream,
舊遊零落半歸泉 Old haunts withered and fallen partially return to their origin.
醉悲灑涙春杯裏 Drunken and sad I shed tears into the spring cup,
吟苦支顔曉燭前 I utter poems in pain supporting my chin in front of a lamp at dawn (…);

2) a short excerpt from the Suma 須磨 chapter\(^{99}\) of Genji Monogatari where Genji’s friend, Tō no Chūjō 頭中将, visits him in exile at the Suma shore and where one finds a line from the same Bo Juyī’s poem:

夜もすがらまどろまず、文作りあかしたまふ。さ言ひながらも、ものの聞こえをつにつみて、急ぎ帰りたまふ。いななかなかなり。御かはらけまゐりて、「酔ひの悲し
び涙そそく春の盃のうち」ともろ声に誦じたまふ。御供の人も涙をながす。おのがじしはつかなる別れ惜しむべかめり。\(^{100}\)

(…) They spent the night not sleeping but making Chinese poems. Still, the Captain was sensitive to rumor after all, and he made haste to leave, which only added to Genji’s pain. Wine cup in hand, they sang together, “Tears of drunken sorrow fill the wine cup of spring.” Their companions wept. Each seemed saddened by so brief a reunion\(^{101}\).

3) a poem by Fujiwara Teika included as no. 1627 in the Shūigusō 拾遺愚草\(^{102}\), which also refers to the same Bo’s poem:

もろともにめぐりあひける旅枕涙ぞそそく春の碗\(^{103}\)

| morotomo ni | Together we |
| meguri afikeru | Met again |
| tabimakura | At the travel pillow |
| namida zo sosoku | And we shed tears |
| faru no sakaduki | Into the spring cup. |

---

\(^{99}\) Suma is one of the chapters of Genji Monogatari, in which the appropriation of Chinese images and poetics, especially of Bo Juyī, is significant.
\(^{100}\) Cf. Murasaki Shikibu 2000.
\(^{102}\) Shūigusō (Foolish Verses of the Court Chamberlain, 1216) is a private poetry collection created by Fujiwara Teika himself. See Ariyoshi 1982:301–302.
\(^{103}\) Cf. Shinpen kokka taikan 2003.
Bo’s poem was definitely the source of inspiration for Shikishi’s *tanka*, since one finds similar vocabulary – *sakaduki* (wine cup), *namida* (tears), *faru* (spring), *mukasi* (past), etc. The question arises as to what the channel of appropriation for Princess Shikishi was. Yamasaki points out that first two lines from this Bo Juyi’s poem are also included in a poem from *Wakan Rōeishū* no. 743, and it is believed that this piece was well known during the Heian Period and early medieval era\(^{104}\). However, since the *Wakan Rōeishū* contains only the first two lines of this poem, it should be excluded as a direct channel of appropriation. Moreover, as pointed out by Yamasaki, Teika’s poem mentioned above was in fact composed in 1196, much later than the *tanka* by Princess Shikishi\(^{105}\), and might have in fact emulated Shikishi’s poem. Based on the above, from among three references provided by Japanese scholars, the most probable is the *Suma* chapter from *Genji Monogatari*, a Heian Period tale highly valued as a source of poetics for the Mikohidari poets\(^{106}\), with whom Princess Shikishi was in close relationship. In addition, Oda points out that the usage of the verb *sosoku* (‘to pour’, ‘to shed’) in Shikishi’s *A* sequence echoes Shunzei’s utilization of this word, generally considered to be of “possibly Chinese” origin in *waka*\(^{107}\). This would imply that at least during the relatively early stage of practicing the art of *waka* under Shunzei’s guidance, Princess Shikishi followed his instructions and possibly emulated his style also in regard to the appropriation of Chinese intertext.

Simultaneously, no matter what the channel of appropriation was, one should not forget that Bo Juyi was not the first Chinese poet who composed poems about sadness and intoxication. In fact, this *tanka* by Princess Shikishi is reminiscent of a poem by Tao Qian 陶潛\(^{108}\) entitled *Qing Song Zai Dong Yuan* 青松在東園 (Green Pine Stands in the Eastern Garden), where one finds an image of a wine cup and a theme of losing one’s way:

\begin{verbatim}
青松在東園
眾草沒其姿
凝霜殄異類
卓然見高枝
連林人不覺
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
A green pine stands in the eastern garden,
A number of grasses sunk its beauty.
When frost destroys other kinds of plants,
It outstandingly reveals its lofty branches.
When I lead other people to the forest they are not aware of it,
\end{verbatim}

\(^{104}\) Yamasaki 2001:121.
\(^{105}\) Ibid., 121.
\(^{106}\) In one of his judgments for *Roppyakuban Uta'awase* – Winter I, Round 13, Shunzei wrote: 源氏見る歌詠みは遺恨の事なり ‘to compose poetry without knowing *Genji* is a regrettable thing’. Cf. Huey 2002:21.
\(^{108}\) Tao Qian (also Tao Yuanming 陶淵明, Jap. Tō Enmei, 365–427) was a poet of the Six Dynasties poetic period (ca. 220–589). He is also one of the foremost “recluse poets”. See Shimura 2011:268–269.
It seems that in Princess Shikishi’s poem the wine cup is a vehicle for lamenting one’s going astray from life path and possibly re-finding it. Thus, intoxication in her *tanka* could be perceived as a virtue, just like in Tao Qian’s poem. The wine cup is thus an old image found in the mainland poetry associated not only with intoxication, but also the so-called “recluse poets” who, either exiled or reclusive by choice, tried to find their path in life.

This author is not entirely sure whether the wine cup and alcohol are a symbol of reaching enlightenment in Princess Shikishi’s *tanka*, but one definitely sees a connection to the spiritual quest and “seeking the way” in the Daoist sense, which in a Japanese poem sounds almost philosophical. If one would like to Japanize this poem with “possibly Chinese” elements and assume that its speaker is a woman, one could interpret *faru no namida* (tears of spring) as tears caused by a love affair, which would locate the poem in a love context but this author finds such an interpretation unconvincing. The Chinese intertext is so obvious and powerful, making the reader focus on the interpretation through earlier poems, implying a more spiritual than amorous theme. That being said, as emphasized by Kristeva and Bakhtin, readers are obviously allowed their own reading and interpretation\(^{110}\).

3.4. 山ふかくやがてとぢにし松の戸にただ有明の月やもりけん\(^{111}\)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{yama fukaku} & \quad \text{Deep in the mountains} \\
\text{yagate todinisi} & \quad \text{Through the already closed} \\
\text{matu no to ni} & \quad \text{Pine door} \\
\text{tada ariake no} & \quad \text{Only the dawn moonlight} \\
\text{tuki ya moriken} & \quad \text{Sinks through} \\
& \quad \text{(the A sequence, miscellaneous no. 92).}
\end{align*}
\]


\(^{110}\) It is worth mentioning that at first sight this poem seems to contain more “old” than “new” poetics. One does not observe any of the poetic devises typical for SKKS and the poem even brings itself to the past by the word *mukasi* (past). The reference to Bo Juyi’s poem could be also understood as a reference to the past but in terms of Japanese poetics of the pre-SKKS era, it was probably considered to be quite innovative.

This is another poem by Princess Shikishi believed by the annotators of her poems to contain allusions to Chinese poetry. In fact, the Chinese intertext in this poem has been studied quite extensively. Different scholars deal with it in various ways, but they all give as the first reference a few lines from a poem by Bo Juyi from vol. 4 of the *Hakushi Monjū* no. 161 entitled *Ling Yuang Qie* (The Concubine at the Mausoleum Garden), which laments the fate of a lady who was ordered to serve in the mausoleum of a deceased Emperor:

山宮一閉無開日
未死此身不令出
松門到曉月徘徊
柏城盡日風蕭瑟

 (...) once Mountain Palace closes there is no day it opens
This body, not yet dead, is not ordered to go.
The dawn moonlight wanders through the pine door
And the wind rustles around the cypress city wall till the end of the day.

松門柏城幽閉深
聞蟬聽燕感光陰
眼看菊蕊重陽淚
手把梨花寒食心

The pine door of the cypress city wall closes tightly
To hear the cicadas and to listen to the swallows is like a change of light and darkness.
To look at the chrysanthemum buds causes tears of the Double Ninth Festival
And to grab a pear flower feels like the Cold Food Festival.

把花掩淚無人見
綠蕪牆繞青苔院
四季徒支粧粉錢
三朝不識君王面

Even if tears are shed on the flowers nobody sees it
The wall of green overgrown weeds is a yard of winding blue moss.
The four seasons only support the expense of the maquillage
The face of the king will be unknown to next three reigns.

---

112 During the Tang dynasty this type of service was considered to be a political and social exile.
113 Double Ninth Festival or Chong Yang 重陽 (jap. Chōyō) Festival is a traditional holiday observed in China, Japan, Korea and Vietnam on the 9th day of the 9th month of the Chinese calendar. According to the *Yi Jing* 易經 (Book of Changes, dates unknown), nine is a yang 阳 number and since the 9th day of the 9th month has too much yang, it is potentially dangerous. To protect against danger, it is customary to climb a high mountain, drink chrysanthemum wine, etc.
114 Cold Food Festival or Hanshi 寒食 Festival is a traditional holiday in China, Korea and Vietnam. It is celebrated for three consecutive days starting on the 105th day after the 22nd solar term (winter solstice) – usually April 5th. This is a time when farmers sow seeds and water their rice paddies. Traditionally all food was to be consumed cold on that day, but it is not a common practice any more.
Nishiki additionally provides a reference to a poem by Shikishi’s contemporary, Minamoto Mitsuyuki 源光行, included in *Shinchokusen Wakashū* as no. 1093:

楽府を題にて歌よみ侍りけるに、陵園妾の心をよめる
とぢはつるみ山のおくの松の戸をうらやましくもいづる月かな

**Composed on the subject of the ‘mourning song’ in a mood of ‘The Concubine at the Mausoleum Garden’**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>todifaturu</th>
<th>It is the moon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miyama no oku no</td>
<td>That rises enviably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matu no to wo</td>
<td>Over the pine door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urayamasiku mo</td>
<td>Starting to close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iduru tuki kana</td>
<td>On the back of the mountain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This *tanka* was composed after Princess Shikishi created the A sequence, so it cannot not be a channel of appropriation in this case, but it demonstrates that early medieval poets composed poems on the subject of *Ling Yang Qie*, and it indicates a likely existence of some kind of discourse engaging Chinese poetry. Nishiki fully acknowledges Bo Juyi’s poem appropriation, but he correctly points out that the reason ‘The Concubine at the Mausoleum Garden’ became so widely appropriated in Japanese poetry at the end of the Heian Period is because it is included in *Kara Monogatari* 唐物語 by Fujiwara Shigenori 藤原成範, a tale that not only appropriates, but also poeticizes and Japanizes many mainland tales. This tale was probably one of the main channels of Chinese literature appropriation in early medieval poetic circles and Princess Shikishi likely read it too. However, it does not

---

116 Minamoto Mitsuyuki (1163–1244) was a governor of, among others, Kawachi 河内 province and cousin of Minamoto Yorimasa 源頼政 (1106–1180). Since childhood he studied *waka* and *monogatari* 物語 (tales) under Shunzei’s guidance, and Chinese poetry under Fujiwara Takanori 藤原孝範 (1158–1233), who maintained a close relationship with the Kujō house. See Ariyoshi 1982:617.


119 *Kara Monogatari* (Tales of China, early Kamakura Period [1185–1333]) is a tale written by Fujiwara Shigenori 藤原成範 (1135–1187). It contains 27 tales that provided translations of the most well known stories about China derived from *Shi Ji* 史記 (Historical Records, ca. 109–91 BC), *Han Shu* 漢書 (The Book of Han, 111), *Jin Shu* 晉書 (The Book of Jin, 648), *Hakushi Monjū*, etc. See *Nipponica* 2012.

120 Fujiwara Shigenori (1135–1187) was a late Heian aristocrat and poet with thirteen poems included in SZS. He was a son of Fujiwara Michinori 藤原通憲 (1106–1160) and a host to numerous poetic events of his era. See Ariyoshi 1982:285.

mean she simply copied Chinese poetry. In fact, Nishiki does not think that the poetic setting in Mitsuyuki’s poem and Shikishi’s poem are identical. He considers the speaker of her *tanka* not to be the solitary, pitiful and lamented lady from the *Ling Yuang Qie* but thinks that the speaker’s presence in a secluded and remote place is motivated by a conscious choice. Nishiki actually believes that this poem is composed from the point of view of a Buddhist recluse\(^\text{122}\) and this author agrees with such an interpretation. A similar opinion was also expressed by Akahane, who pointed out that before Princess Shikishi, *matu no to* was not used frequently in *waka*. Yet, one finds this line in a poem composed by a holy man\(^\text{123}\), one of the characters appearing in the *Wakamurasaki* 若紫 chapter\(^\text{124}\) of *Genji Monogatari*. The poem occurs in the context of taking on Buddhist vows, where it emphasizes an image of Buddhist seclusion\(^\text{125}\). Akahane also claims that in a few of Shikishi’s poems where one finds *matu no to*, one should read it dualistically, i.e. from both the Buddhist recluse and the “waiting woman” perspective, since *matu* (pine tree) symbolizing seclusion is a pun on waiting (*matu* also means ‘to wait’). This author believes that the presence of “reclusive poetics” in Princess Shikishi’s poems is generally underestimated and replaced by the image of the “waiting woman”\(^\text{126}\).

---

122 Ibid., 150.

123 奥山の松のとぼそをまれに開けてまだ見ぬ花の顔を見るかな

okuyama no
matu no toboso wo
mare ni akete
mada minu fana no
kafo wo miru kana

I open at last,
I need to see the face of a flower

124 In the beginning of the *Wakamurasaki* chapter, Prince Genji suffers from a fever and he goes to visit a holy man in the mountains, from whom he expects to get help. The holy man recited the mentioned poem during his conversation with Prince Genji.

125 Akahane 1981:40.

126 It is not to say that Princess Shikishi did not also compose poems containing “possibly Chinese” elements from the perspective of the lonely “waiting woman”. An example is an autumn poem from the B sequence:

秋の夜の静かにくらき窓の雨打歎かれてひましらむなり

aki no yo no
siduka ni kuraki
mado no ame
utinagekarete
fima siramu nari

On an autumn night
The rain strikes the window
Quiet and dark.
I grieve our separation

In accordance with Akahane’s approach towards the analysis of poems, also this *tanka* could be interpreted dualistically – as a reclusive and love poem. Words *fima* and *siramu* create such possibility since they are both puns having double meanings (*kakekotoba*). *Fima* thus can mean ‘separation’ or ‘free time’, while *siramu* can mean ‘to weaken’ or ‘will/would know’ (verb *siru* in a tentative final form). The reading of this poem in a theme of love is possible since it is believed to contain a reference to a Bo Juyi’s lament, included in *Wakan Rōeishū* and *Hakushi Monjū*, composed in a voice of one of Emperor Xuanzong of Tang’s (685–762) mistresses, who was neglected since the Emperor favored the beautiful Yang Guifei 楊貴妃 (719–756).
the pre- and post-Tang influences on Japanese medieval poetry was brought up by both Pollack and Smits. In this particular poem by Princess Shikishi one observes the monochromaticity of all of the images, which are claimed by Pollack as reflective of not only the new poetic style of SKKS, but also of Zen Buddhism and new aesthetics of *heitan* 平淡 (plainness, simplicity), or *ping-dan* in Chinese, and were highly valued by Shunzei and Teika\(^\text{127}\). Moreover, Pollack traces back poetic ideals characteristic of SKKS, like *sabi* 寂 (simplicity) and *yojō* 余情 (overtones), to the post-Tang Song poetic theories. He does not imply that those Japanese poetic ideals were simply derived from the Song practices, but rather suggests that their sudden importance reflected the court poets’ awareness of the new Song aesthetic style, so clearly evident in other aspects of the Song culture, e.g. tea, calligraphy, ink-painting, etc.\(^\text{128}\). Smits, on the other hand, points out that the Tang poets were engaged in a process of revaluation and a new synthesis of older poets, e.g. Tao Qian\(^\text{129}\), rather than creating their own reclusive poetics. The Tang views of all of Chinese heritage were important for the late Heian and early medieval Japanese poets, and they were probably the main channel of appropriation of Chinese culture and literature for the Japanese poets. Thus, one should not forget that Japanese poets did not appropriate only the Tang poetry, but also many layers of earlier intertext and Chinese poetry heritage that were included in the Tang poetics.

Okuno, besides providing the same Mitsuyuki’s poem as a reference, does not mention *Kara Monogatari* but quotes Shunzei’s judgment on another Mitsuyuki poem during *Kenkyū Rokunen Shōgatsu Hatsuka Minbukyō no Ie no Uta’awase* 建久六年正月二十日民部卿家歌合\(^\text{130}\), in which he recognized the reference to Bo’s poem and praised Mitsuyuki:

```
松の戸に独ながめしむかしさえ思ひしらるるあり有の月
```

```
matu no to ni
fitori nagamesi
mukasi sae
omofisiraruru
ariake no tuki
```

At the pine door  
I gazed alone.  
The one remembering  
As much as the past  
Is the bright morning moon.

---

\(^\text{128}\) Ibid., 90.  
\(^\text{130}\) *Kenkyū Rokunen Shōgatsu Hatsuka Minbukyō no Ie no Uta’awase* (Poetry Contest at the Residence of the Popular Affairs Ministry Chief on the Twentieth Day, Tenth Month, Sixth Year of Kenkyū, 1195) was an event held by Fujiwara Tsunefusa 藤原経房 (1143–1200). Poets were mainly from the Mikohidari and Rokujō houses. Shunzei was a judge of the event and it is believed that during this poetry contest he favored poems by the Rokujō school. The event is significant, since Shunzei expressed many of his opinions about *waka* in the judgments. See Ariyoshi 1982:179.  
The poem did not win the round, but it was tied with the left poem by Kamo Shigemasa 賀茂重政 (1142–1225). Shunzei’s comment about Mitsuyuki’s poem states the following:

「右歌、昔思ひ知らるる、といへる、是は文集の陵園妻を思へるなるべし。但、松門曉到月徘回、とぞいへれば、松の門とはもじみたる、さざく、松の戸、といはんも、ふかき難にはあらずべし…」132

(...) the right poem understands the past; that is to say, this [poem] ought to bring to mind “The Concubine at the Mausoleum Garden” from the [Hakushi] Monjü. However, since it says “above the pine gate the moon wanders till dawn”, the “pine gate” appears, but just to say “the pine door” should not have been a great difficulty (...).

Okuno thus gives us a proof that Shunzei valued Chinese poetry and publicly acknowledged references to it, which may be significant in the case of Shiki-shi’s poem, since she probably alluded to poems she studied under Shunzei’s guidance.

Oda provides a legitimate reference to a fragment of the Tenarai 手習 chapter from Genji Monogatari, where Bishop Yogawa 横川僧都 visits Ukifune 浮舟 after she recovered from her unsuccessful suicide133, in which one finds exactly the same line from the Ling Yang Qie Princess Shikishi alludes to in her own tanka:

「御法服新しくしたまへ」とて、絽、羅、紬などいふもの、たてまつりおきたまふ。「なにがしがはべらむ限りは、仕うまつりなむ。なにか思いわづらふべき。常の世に生ひ出でて、世間の栄華に願ひまつはるる限りなむ、所狭く捨てがたく、我も人も思すべかめることなめる。かかる林の中に行ひ勤めたまはむ身は、何事かは恨めしくも恥づかしくも思すべき。このあらむ 命は、葉の薄きがごとし」と言ひ知らせて、「松門に暁到りて月徘徊す」と、法師なれど、いとよしよし恥づかしげなるさまにてのたまふことどもを、「思ふやうにも言ひ聞かせたまふかな」と聞きゐたり。134

---

133 Ukifune is one of the heroines of Genji Monogatari. She is the unrecognized daughter of Prince Hachi no Miya 八宮 and lives with her mother at a distance from the royal court. Ukifune was loved by both Kaoru 薫 (son of Genji’s wife – Onna San no Miya 女三宮 and Kashiwagi 柏木) and Prince Niou 匂兵 (Genji’s grandson), but she had secretly been agonizing by her indecision. Eventually in order to release herself from the triangular love affair, she attempted suicide by throwing herself into the Uji River 宇治川 but was unsuccessful. Having been rescued, she became a nun and secluded herself at the western foot of Mount Hiei 比叡山. She refuses to see Kaoru again, where the entire story of Genji comes to an end.
“Please have a new habit made,” he said, and he gave her damask, silk gauze, and plain silk. “I shall look after you as long as I live. You need not worry. No one born into this common life and still entangled in thoughts of worldly glory can help finding renunciation nearly impossible; but why should you, pursuing your devotions here in the forest, feel either bitterness or shame? After all, this life is as tenuous as a leaf.” And he added, “The moon roams till dawn over the gate among the pines;” for although a monk, he was also a man of impressive elegance. “That is just the advice I wanted”, she told herself.

Moreover, Oda acknowledges Nishiki’s opinion about the influence of *Kara Monogatari* on early medieval poets, and also provides a reference to Teika’s poem from *Futami no Ura Hyakushu* 二見浦百首136, also included in *Shūigusō* as no. 200, on the subject of the *Ling Yuang Qie*. Even though it refers to a different line from Bo’s poem and could not be a direct channel of reference for Princess Shikishi, it is another proof that the *Ling Yuang Qie* was frequently referred to by the early medieval poets:

なれきにしの光の恋しさにひとりしほるる菊のうは露137

*narekinisi*  Into the yearning
*sora no fikari no*  For the familiar
*kofisisa ni*  Light of the sky
*fitori siforuru*  Squeezes itself -
*kiku no ufatsuyu*  The upper dew of the chrysanthemums.

Thus, the reference to Bo Juyi’s poem is more than obvious in Princess Shikishi’s poem but it was probably one of the tales – *Kara Monogatari* or *Genji Monogatari* – that became the channel of appropriation of this Bo Juyi poem for Princess Shikishi. This author does not object to Akahane’s dualistic reading of this poem as both reclusive and amorous. Akahane emphasizes that Shikishi was probably perceived by her contemporaries as a recluse138. Thus, this author would like to emphasize that Shikishi’s poems do not have to be interpreted only from the perspective of a female voice of the “waiting woman” that supports the medievialized image of her as a lonely secluded lady. This author actually believes that her poem is composed with the voice of a recluse poet, or a hermit-monk, who is

---

136 *Futami no Ura Hyakushu* (Hundred Poem Sequence of the Futami Bay, 1186) was a poetic event organized by Saigyō 西行 (1118–1190) for a Buddhist temple Daijingū Hōraku 大神宮法楽. It is believed that this event was the start of moving towards a new poetic style for Fujiwara Teika and other poets, who participated in this event. See *Waka daijiten* 1986:869.
traditionally male in both China and Japan. In fact, the image of a lonely woman becomes apparent only when one realizes the reference to the *Ling Yuan Qie*. If one allows the interpretation of her poems as having a double base of both reclusive and love themes, it may turn out that, as also emphasized by Oda, Princess Shikishī’s relatively significant appropriation of Chinese poetry and her unique poetic style were perhaps the reasons her poetry was perceived as unusual for a female poet and thus so highly valued by her male contemporaries.

**Conclusions**

Surprisingly, the more poems one reads by Princess Shikishī, the more frequently they turn out to contain numerous layers of “possibly Chinese” intertext. This author expects that there is still much more to unravel on this subject than has been discovered in this article, which analyzes only four poetic examples by Princess Shikishī. However, the results of this study hopefully disclose a few important features and patterns of her appropriation of mainland poetry, as well as indicate some general tendencies in the perception and appropriation of Chinese poetics in Japan during the early medieval period.

First of all, there are probably two types of appropriation of Chinese poetry notable in *waka* by Princess Shikishī: 1) indirect, represented by poems 3.1. and 3.2., which do not refer to any particular Chinese poems but play off of some “possibly Chinese” images and vocabulary and thus give the poems a foreign or mainland feel; 2) semi-direct, represented by poems 3.3. and 3.4., which refer to Chinese poems, but probably not directly. The semi-direct intertext is particularly important, since the existence of earlier Japanese poetry and tales referring to, or citing, the exact same lines of Chinese poems proves that the appropriation of mainland poetry was probably channeled through a number of Heian and medieval tales, e.g. *Genji Monogatari*, *Kara Monogatari*, etc. and Japanese poetry collections, e.g. *Wakan Rōeishū*, *Hakushi Monjū*, etc. Such channels of appropriation were established already in the Heian Period and were only reused by the early medieval poets, who alluded to and played off the same Chinese poems, thus re-establishing the Japanese canon of Chinese poetry. Simultaneously, even though the Tang poetry was a significant part of this canon, one must be aware that pre-Tang (e.g. the *Shi Jing*, *Chu Ci*, or the poetry of Tao Qian) and post-Tang Song poetry were also somehow present in Princess Shikishī’s poetry and probably in poems by other early poets.

---

139 Oda 1995a:360.
140 It is worth mentioning that on the surface this poem does not seem to be innovative in any way. One does not observe any of the poetic devises typical for SKKS. Theme of seclusion and the reference to a line from Bo’s lament are the most distinctive features of this *tanka*, and such style of composing poetry itself might have been perceived as innovative in the pre-SKKS era.
medieval poets. Some of those layers of Chinese intertext were first estabilished by the Tang poets and then appropriated by the Heian and early medieval Japanese poets. Thus, readers are dealing not only with direct intertext but ages and layers of all kinds of Chinese intertext, in Princess Shikishi’s case probably channelled through the Japanese rather than Chinese sources. There is no proof that she could read or write Chinese, although, considering her high social status, affiliation with Fujiwara Shunzei and about ten years spent in the Kamo Shrines where she had more than enough time to study poetry of all previous sai’in, some of which is in Chinese\textsuperscript{141}, it should not be surprising if she was able to write poems in Chinese. In the case of poets like Fujiwara Shunzei and Fujiwara Teika who definitely could read and write in Chinese, it is difficult to confirm if their appropriation of Chinese poetry was made through the process of extensive reading in Chinese, or in Japanese. However, this author believes that their references and respect for the Chinese poetics were motivated by the willingness to renew waka after hundreds of years of poetic tradition, and by the existence of collections like Wakan Rōeishū, tales like Genji Monogatari and Kara Monogatari, and numerous allusions to mainland poems made by the earlier Heian poets and writers.

Another important feature of the appropriation of Chinese poetry in Princess Shikishi’s waka is that it was probably also channelled through Fujiwara Shunzei’s poetic guidance\textsuperscript{142}. In the case of poems by Fujiwara Teika who, as Shunzei’s son, received similar or even more extensive education than Princess Shikishi in Japanese poetry, and probably in a way looked up to her as a poet, the channel of appropriation of Chinese poetry between Teika and Shikishi, if it even existed, was probably based on much more equal terms than with Shunzei\textsuperscript{143}.

The final conclusion is that elements of “possibly Chinese” origin and the whole notion of wakan, however defined, is undeniably present in a number of poems by Princess Shikishi, even though it is not the most significant part of intertext

\textsuperscript{141} This author would also not exclude the possibility of Chinese imagery appropriation in Shikishi’s poems through Chinese and Japanese poetry composed by a number of previous sai’in at the Kamo Shrines in Kyoto. It is well known that the first sai’in, Princess Uchiko 有智子内親王 (807–847), wrote poems only in Chinese. Moreover, the famous Princess Senshi 選子内親王 (964–1035), who served as a sai’in for 57 years, wrote waka herself and even had her own poetic salon consisting of professional female poets. It is also known that such poetic salons produced highly valued female poets of many eras, e.g. Yūshi Naishinnō-ke no Ki and Toshiko Naishinnō-ke no Kawachi 俊子内親王家河内 (late Heian), who each have 100 poems included in the famous Horikawa Hyakushu. However, since this article is based on only a few poetic examples, more extensive research of Princess Shikishi’s appropriation of Chinese poetics should be conducted to conclude if this channel of appropriation is a possibility.

\textsuperscript{142} Oda 1988:39 suggests that the presence of “Chinese vocabulary” in the A sequence by Princess Shikishi might originate in Fujiwara Shunzei’s poetry and instruction.

\textsuperscript{143} Various Japanese scholars approach this subject differently, e.g. the well known Fujiwara Teika scholar, Yasuda Ayao (1917–1979), did not mention appropriation of Chinese poetry as a common feature of both Princess Shikishi’s and Teika’s poetry. See Yasuda 1975:246–262.
within her currently available poetic corpus. It is also worth mentioning that Princess Shikishi’s appropriation of Chinese images and reference to Chinese poems does not merely copy the mainland poetics. The borrowed images are appropriated, reinterpreted and put in similar, or different context from the original poems, but they are likely more the background, not the core, of Shikishi’s poems, which coincides with Pollack’s definition of *wakan*. Princess Shikishi thus chose and appropriated those Chinese images through various channels of appropriation created in Japan, and it was not the Chinese culture that influenced her, which coincides with Smits’s opinion about *wakan*. Moreover, the awareness of the Chinese intertext and reclusive images hopefully changes both the readers’ perception of Princess Shikishi and of her poems’ speakers as being only the “waiting woman”. Multiple layers of intertext and the channels of its appropriation in her poems create an interesting sort of discourse with the poetic past of both Japan and China, which even though, as emphasized by LaMarre, was perceived as foreign, was significant enough for Japanese poets to study and appropriate. This is evident in the poetry of many early medieval poets, who in the pre-SKKS era clearly searched for poetic innovation and reinterpretation, and found it among the Chinese poetry of earlier eras.

**Bibliography:**


Go-Toba-in 2006. “Go-Toba-in gokuden” [secret teachings of Retired Emperor Go-Toba]. In: Watanabe Yasuaki, Kobayashi Kazuhiko, Yamamoto Hajime (eds.)


Ishikawa Tatsunehiko 1967 „Ruiken to kosei – Shikishi Naishinnō (Tama no o) no ba’ai” [genre and personality – the case of tama no o poem by Princess Shikishi]. Kokugo kokubun (Kyōto: Chūōtosho Shuppansha) 36, 23–44.


今村みゑ子 1995. 定家と式子内親王―「明月記」を中心に。文学 六号。東京 : 岩波書店。

石川常彦 1967. 類型と個性-式子内親王「玉の緒」の場合。国語国文 三六号。京都 : 中央図書出版社。

石川泰水、谷知子 2001。式子内親王集、俊成卿女集、建礼門院右京大夫集。東京：明治書院。


久保田淳 1985。藤原定家全歌集：訳注。東京：河出書房新社。


松枝茂夫 和田武司1991。陶淵明全集（上）。東京：岩波書店。


松野陽一 吉田薫 2007。藤原俊成全歌集。東京：笠間書院。


村井俊司 1993。式子内親王の社会的 位置—御子左家との関係を含めて。中京国文学 十二号。名古屋: 中京大学国文学会。


村井俊司 1997。八条院に於ける式子内親王。中京大学教養論叢 三八号。名古屋: 中京大学。

Chūkyō Daigaku) 40, 830–818.


小田剛 1988. 式子内親王歌の「注く」－その漢語的側面。滋賀大国文 二六号。大津：滋賀大国文会。


小田剛 1989。式子内親王歌の漢語的側面－「窓」「静（～）」。藤岡忠美。古今和歌集連環。大阪：和泉書院。


小田剛 1995。式子内親王全歌注釈。大阪：和泉所院。


岡村繁1988。白氏文集（一）。東京：明治書院。


岡村繁1990。白氏文集（四）。東京：明治書院。


奧の陽子 2001。式子内親王集全釈。東京：風間書房。


志村有弘2011。詩歌作者事典。東京：鼎書房。

新編国歌大観 2003。CD ROM 東京 : 角川書店。


山崎桂子 1978。「式子内親王集」の研究 : 百首歌の成立時期をめぐって。国文学攷 七七号。広島: 広島大学国語国文学会。


安田章生 1978。藤原定家研究。東京 : 至文堂。


吉崎桂子 2001。式子内親王の漢詩摂取の和歌を読む。武蔵野大学大学院言語文化研究科・人間社会研究科研究紀要 一号、西東京 : 武蔵野大学大学院言語文化研究科・人間社会研究科。
論文の日本語レジュメ

Małgorzata Karolina Citko

レジュメ

チトコ・マウゴジャタ・カロリナ

式子内親王府の和歌に於ける「漢詩的のようの」起源の要素

本論文では、式子内親王といった中世前期の歌人の四首の短歌は検討され、その「漢詩的のようの」・アジア本土の多様の種類・層のインターテキストと、そのインターテキストが伝授されたテキスト（私家集・物語）は考慮される。そして、享受・摂取という文学的現象と、和歌の特徴である和漢概念も再考・再定義される。本論文の結果によると、式子内親王のような中世前期の歌人の和歌に於ける「漢詩的のようの」インターテキストは、広く認識された唐詩論のみでなく、唐以前・唐以後の宋詩論も重要である。従って、古代・海外からインスピレーションを受けた『新古今和歌集』の時代に、式子内親王がその時代の直前期の和歌の革新者として表示される。

Keywords: Princess Shikishi, ancient Chinese poetry, early medieval poetry, wakan, Tang poetics, Song poetics, intertextuality
A close examination of the writings of Matsuo Bashō (1644–1694), his prose and poetry, reveals at least two key turning points in the way he saw the world, his ethical views and aesthetic preferences. No doubt there were more such changes on a smaller scale, but these two were diametric.

I wrote about the first of them – which occurred in 1684 – in my 2007 book. The change consisted in a switch from exhorting new students to fight for the school’s growth and future to appealing to them to seek spiritual freedom in the impermanence as well as constancy of events and phenomena (*fuekiryūkō*). It should be kept in mind that the word “freedom” (Jap. *jiyū*)1, according to Confucian ethics, sounded pejorative, like egoism – literally, “everything according to your own nose”. In the end, it became important for Bashō to encourage his students to joyfully accept everything that the present moment brings – with simplicity and child-like wonder.

I came to this conclusion, having consulted the views of such Japanese scholars as Ogata Tsutomu, Matsuo Yasuaki, Kuriyama Riichi, Hori Nobuo and Muramatsu Tomotsugu2, in the course of interpreting one of three 36-verse renku compositions collected in an anthology entitled *A Winter Day* (Jap. *Fuyu no hi*)3.

The second turning point, which took place over a span of several years starting in the autumn of 1689 when Bashō returned from a long journey that he wrote about in his travel diary *Narrow Road to the Deep North*4 (*Oku no hosomichi*), will be the subject of this article. I will endeavor to present texts that were written between 1689 and 1693, although those that “should have been written, but were passed over in silence”5, I believe, were even more important.

---

1 This word appears to have entered Japanese social, political and personal discourse in the positive sense of “freedom” only after the transformation of Japan under the Meiji Restoration.

2 See the bibliography in Żuławska-Umeda 2007:235–7.

3 See chapter four in Żuławska-Umeda 2007: 46–134

4 Thus in Donald Keene’s translation; we have also *The Narrow Road to the Interior*, as in Helen Craig McCullough’s interpretation, *Basho’s Narrow Road to a Far Province* as Dorothy Britton interpreted, etc.
When reading the texts that have survived from that period, I get the impression that Bashō encountered Christians who had gone into hiding in the north-east provinces of Honshu island and learned something about their faith, their martyrdom, or at least opinions about their situation. Mysterious letters written by the poet to his students strengthen this impression. In this context, the title he gave his travel diary several years after returning home acquires deeper significance … Oku no hosomichi\(^5\) also means “paths that lead to the depth of one’s self”, into the “depth of the heart”, to “the experience of depth”. Also, paths that lead “to ultimate things”, to “future things” or, “into recesses hidden from the world”, and even into “the secret of matters and things”.\(^6\)

Clearly, he was changed by this journey. I will attempt to show what the poet’s internal transformation consisted of.

The hypothesis of this article is that Bashō returned from his wanderings in north-east Japan a changed man – in terms of his sensibility, literary style, the way he saw the world and, above all, it seems to me, his deepened awareness of the increasingly concealed life of the Christian community. The evidence, if not proof, I adduce for this claim rests on information I collected during the following three phases of my research:

1. Comparing Bashō’s writings before and after his 1689 journey, including his reflections on those travels published three years afterwards in his so-called travel diary Narrow Road to the Deep North.
2. Presenting the history of Japanese Christians (a story that has never been told in its entirety), who, at the time Bashō took his epic journey, had already gone deep underground, praying in forests, at various Buddhist temples and Shinto shrines. Increasingly repressive regulations and purges against Christians under the country’s military dictatorship cast light on the history of their underground communities.
3. Tracing the route that Bashō took with his companion Sora, who, as we know, secretly performed a mission under order of the bakufu: to search and purge Buddhist temples and Shinto shrines of the remnants of Christian communities who still met there.

These tasks will be discussed sparingly – in proportion to the spatial limitations of this article – and not necessarily in the order listed above. However, I am aware that if there existed texts unambiguously indicating that Bashō’s views had changed in the ways I assert they did, their author would probably have suffered or even perished as a sympathizer of Christianity\(^7\) considering the policies in effect under the ruling Tokugawa clan.

\(^5\) The name Oku specifies northeast Japan only geographically (Jap. Michinoku or Okushū) – that is, the general destination of Bashō’s wanderings in 1689.


We can look upon the texts I have chosen – after analyzing the historical, social and ideological setting of XVII-century Japan – as containing encoded messages conveying content not yet perceived in Bashō’s oeuvre. It’s a subject capacious enough for a lengthy monograph. This is also why I touch upon only a few of the most important issues in this article.

Let’s take a look at the intellectual foundation from which Bashō arose and drew his historical, philosophical and literary knowledge. For Bashō, the height of erudition was the ability to read and understand Chinese texts (which in Japan’s intellectual spheres was, and continues to be, the norm). He relied – particularly in the field of natural philosophy, which he pursued at the beginning of his career in his own school – on the writings of Laozi (Jap. Rōshi, VIII-V century B.C.E) and Zhuangzi (Jap. Sōshi) as well as Chinese Tang (Jap. tōshi) dynasty poetry and Buddhist scriptures (Jap. butten). In order to go beyond the boundaries of haikai under the danrin school led by Nishiyama Sōin (1605~1682), of whom he had been an apprentice, Bashō learned the poetics and memorized entire works by Du Fu (Jap. Toho, 712–770), Li Bai’a (Jap. Rihaku, 701–762), and Bo Qu Yi (Jap. Hakurakuten, 772–846). Previously, during his apprenticeship in the teimon school under master Matsunaga Teitoku (1571~1653), he read and memorized the Japanese classics, including Collected Japanese Poems of Ancient and Modern Times (Kokinwakashū, 905), The Tale of Genji (Genjimonogatarii, early XI century) and medieval essays, discovering their Chinese roots over time.

So the erudite Matsuo Bashō advised his students to educate themselves in the classics. This advice even became a rule of his haikai school. Yet he himself was well aware of the impossibility of adapting the great Chinese literary works to brief and expressively spare Japanese poems. Moreover, he was highly determined – as he reveals in the introduction to his Records of a Travel-Worn Satchel (Oi no kobumi) – to devote his life to the haikai style, aesthetics, poetics and finally its ethical principles. These principles led him – after returning from his journey to the North described three years later in Narrow Road to the Deep North (Oku no hosomichi, written c. 1692) – to another goal, which was wandering. And to the supreme value of “not-having”, including not having satisfaction in creating things, not having popularity and not having a large number of students. It’s as if he reconciled himself – faithful henceforth in every instance to his new credo – to not revealing his own genius in its entirety, to leaving merely a shadow of it in his minimalist verses, to a “great and intended waste of spirit”. This is a key moment in the poet’s creative output. While he continued to draw upon the classics, he no

---

8 One of the six conditions that a shōfū school apprentice must satisfy is “not a poor knowledge of classical Chinese and Japanese writings”.

9 As in the case of Narrow Road to the Deep North, a diary from a trip taken in 1689, the text of The Records of a Travel-Worn Satchel (Jap. Oi no kobumi), from a much shorter journey in 1687–88, was written during 1690–92, thus retrospectively and with some philosophical intent.
longer did so in a literal manner. He appears to have adapted them to fit a particular purpose—perhaps it was directing the thoughts of some less sophisticated or less sensitive reader (say, a carefully censuring government official with superficial knowledge of “long-ago things”) toward the ancient sages. In reality, however, he was writing about himself, in an absolutely unpopular manner in the “fleeting and light-hearted” world of ukiyo.

This is how the introductions (which I cite below) to both of Bashō’s travel diaries can be interpreted. He shows his attributes in them, which take shape in the course of describing his spiritual wandering: frailty (Jap. shiori), which is no longer only the frailty of the transient world, and in this sense a category of beauty, but his own frailty, his own weakness (usumono, kaze ni yabureyasuki koto), yielding to spirituality and moving away from the corporeality and concreteness characteristic of Chinese philosophers (fūrabō); yielding to his own madness (fūkyō) as justification for deviating from social norms; and finally begging (kojiki), expecting everything to be provided by Heaven, the Creating Force (ten, tenchi, zōka ni shitagau) or the gods (kami).

Included amidst these hundred bones and nine openings is IT10. In the mean time, let’s call this something by the name Wind-Borne11. Truly, don’t you feel in it an existence that’s frail, brittle, easily blown away by the slightest puff of wind? It has long valued “mad verses” above all else. Until in the end it built its life on them […]12.

The months and days are the pilgrims of the ages. The years that come and go are like voyagers13. Those who spend their lives aboard ships or who greet their old...
age without letting go the bridle are forever journeying, and their homes are wherever their travels take them. Ancient sages sometimes died on the road, and I too for many years have been stirred by the wind, which frays the white clouds and leaves me ceaselessly longing to roam. […] the sky had barely been swathed in mist, which heralds the new spring, when I was seduced by the power of an unknown god¹⁴ and felt in my heart the mad desire to pass through the gate at Shirakawa¹⁵. […]¹⁶.

There were also political reasons for this attitude. The brief verses, their fragmentary expression and hard-to-grasp content eluded censorship under the bakufu, the totalitarian military state. This government – particularly after putting down the rebellion of rōnin, peasants and Christians on Shimabara peninsula (1637~38), when shōgun Tokugawa Iemitsu (1604~1651) decided to definitively purge Japan of Christian communities – began to see signs of illegal Christian activity everywhere (in publications as well as behaviors that deviated from neo-Confucian norms). This stance by the bakufu took the form of the gradually implemented (from 1661 to 1672) system called shūmon-aratame (“renewal of faith”), which was meant to force people to declare their membership in a Buddhist temple (tera’uke). These declarations were registered in the shūmon ninbetsu chō, or Registers of Religion Adherents¹⁷. They also served as population registries. Looking at the history of this period, specifically the totalitarian system of XVII century Japan, when large pogroms against Christians were no longer necessary¹⁸, we find that purges aimed at the remnant underground Christian community were still occurring on an ongoing basis¹⁹.

in: Kobun shinpō (Treasures of the Classics): Sore tenchi wa banbutsu no gekiryo ni shite, kōin wa hyaku-dai no kakyaku nari “here heaven and earth are wayfarers only in the wandering of all things, and the light of day and darkness of night are pilgrims of the ages and generations” (translation AZU).

¹⁴ In the original: sozorokami – a word that no editor of this text has ever entirely explained, though its lexical meaning is: of unknown origin, unknown, unnamable, surprising god, or God?…

¹⁵ Shirakawa no seki, one of the three important barriers (road blocks) in Northeast Japan, located in present-day Fukushima prefecture. Passing through it meant crossing into Japan’s frontier and entering a very different, little-known world on the fringe of civilization. Ever since the Man’yōshū (Collection of Ten Thousand Leaves, 8th century), this name has evoked important connotations (utamakura): remoteness from the royal court, from the cultural center, solitude, exile. These associations are revived by Bashō.

¹⁶ Matsuo Bashō 2002:257. In the original Polish article, all Japanese excerpts were translated by Agnieszka Żuławska-Umeda.

¹⁷ Cf. Saitō 1981:9

¹⁸ The bakufu conducted the last great pogrom against Christians in Owari province in 1663, killing over 200 people. Thereafter only groups or individual Christians remained, who went deep underground and faced a broad range of punishments if revealed (applicable also to their families), ranging from being forced to tread on holy pictures (fumie), individual restrictions, imprisonment (so-called kirishitan yashiki), to banishment, torture and cruel executions. See: Kirishitan iseki to junrei no tabi, mappu, gaidobukku [pilgrimage in the footsteps of the Christians, maps, guide books]. Osaka: Aishinkan, 1981, p. 176.

¹⁹ See Kroehler & Kroehler 2006.
For example, in 1673 the Tokugawa bakufu ordered verification of all documents of former Christians who had rejected their faith. In 1681 the daimyō of Aizu han, Hoshina Masakata (1669–1731; the family acceded to the Matsudaira clan, aoi crest, in 1699), increased the reward for denouncing a Christian to 500 pieces of silver. In 1687 the fifth Tokugawa shōgun, Tokugawa Tsunayoshi (1646–1709), officially prohibited the mistreatment of all living creatures. The ban, however, did not apply to people, and especially to Christians. In 1688, a board was posted in every village of Aizu listing the names of family members and descendents of executed Christians, the so-called Ruizokuchō. Persons appearing on the list were condemned to ostracism (Jap. mura hachibu).

Two years after these events Bashō left his home in Fukagawa, which his students had funded and built for him. This was in the spring, on the 20th day of the 3rd lunar month (May 9, according to our solar calendar) in the second year of the Genroku era (1689). He was 46 years old at the time. He was accompanied by his friend and student Iwanami Sora (1649–1707; later known by the name Kawai), whom he had only recently met and who proved to be an official of the daimyō Matsudaira clan of Nagashima han, and toward the end of his life, a secret agent of the shogunate. Sora was to perform a special role in this journey and was a great help to his haikai master when crossing well-guarded roadblocks and provincial borders.

Several years ago a previously unknown letter written by Bashō was found, which was addressed – as Muramatsu Tomotsugu believes – to a samurai in Edo named Kanaemon. It was dated 20 January 1689, thus a little less than two months before the poet set off on his journey to the North. In it, Bashō laments – kinō yori namida otoshigachi nite [...] (“I’ve done nothing but cry since yesterday [...]”) – that his student Rotsū, who was supposed to have accompanied him on the long trip, suddenly (three days earlier) disappeared from Edo and set off in the opposite direction, toward the former capital of Kyoto. If Rotsū had left voluntarily, Bashō would probably have rebuked him sharply, not despaired. Yet despite the rumors and backbiting he must have heard from his students, Bashō steadfastly defended Rotsū and respected him for his extraordinary approach to life and his good haikai poetry. He was highly protective of Rotsū, as he knew that his student had been

---

20 Ibid.
21 Found by chance by the curator of the Bashō Museum in Yamadera Temple in the city of Yamagata. Ogata Tsutomu and Muramatsu Tomotsugu have authenticated it.
22 Rotsū (1649–1738) – his family name was Yasomura, which itself sounded “bad”: phonetically, it sounded like Jesus (Yaso in the 16th-century Japan), and graphically it consisted of three elements: two number 8’s and a 10 together with the noun “group”, “village”. According to some scholars who focus on the Edo period, such as Kawashiri, Christians sometimes modified their family or given names so that they contained a cross element – the number 10 or a tree. We do not know why Rotsū, beginning in 1673, was forced to lead the life of a wandering beggar. In 1685 he joined Bashō’s school. Once again he had to leave until finally, in the spring of 1689, he briefly met his beloved master in Ōgaki, as Bashō was on his way back home from the North.
wandering the country and begging since 1674 – and, in contrast to his master, not of his own free will...

Then, by peculiar coincidence, the man who was to be Bashō’s travel companion suddenly turned out to be the mysterious\(^{23}\) Sora. Sora had lived in Fukagawa nearby Bashō for barely two years. He quickly became the poet’s friend and student, chopped firewood for him and carried water to his cottage from a well. Repeatedly, during their journey to the North, he would suddenly disappear then rejoin Bashō unexpectedly, having performed secret tasks known only to himself.


Does Bashō come back home? His home in his adult and creative life was in Edo, in Fukagawa, on the east coast of Japan. His family home was in Ueno, in Iga province – in western Japan. His spiritual home was perpetual wandering. And that’s the home he chose. In early September he left the friendly confines of Ōgaki to bow to the goddess Amaterasu at the Ise Grand Shrine at the close of his long pilgrimage. Yet he was to go further. In late September he stayed at his brother’s residence, at their family home, for two months. At the end of November the wind pushed the restless poet toward the heart of ancient Japan – Nara, Kyoto, Ōtsu – where he briefly went into seclusion on the south shore of Biwa Lake, in an area called Zeze. He greeted New Year 1690 there. But on the third day of New Year celebrations he headed off to his brother’s. In the privacy of the family home, amid simple everyday activities, he came to adopt a new aesthetic value which would

\(^{23}\) Toda 2005 considered him to be a member of the Matsudaira clan. According to Muramatsu 2002, Sora was a \textit{ninja}, or shogun’s spy. Kawashiri 1992:45 writes about Sora’s second incarnation as Mito Mistukuni, a member of the shōgun’s family. According to Kawashiri 1992:52–55, he organized the trip to the North in order to find texts of the Apocalypse of St. John, as he was interested in prophetic scriptures, which sounds improbable. In any case, Sora must have had a powerful patron who issued passes of safe-conduct and enabled him to roam freely around the country.
leave its mark on the final period of his roaming and creative work. This value was *karumi*, lightness, though not only lightness of poetic expression. It encompassed a sense of detachment toward fleeting life, a feeling of freedom, even a certain disregard\(^\text{24}\) for the world. As if *this* world was no longer the most important.

While on a year-long academic visit to the University of Tokyo five years ago, I had the occasion (during day-long conferences devoted to *haikai* held once a month) to speak with historians specializing in the Edo period as well as literature experts who had studied Matsuo Bashō. Some interesting conclusions were reached, including: “the fact that Bashō came into contact with Christians during his journey around the northern wilderness of Japan in 1689 should be written about more boldly...” Perhaps this poet encountered the Christian faith and became starkly aware of the reality of the earlier pogroms? Presumably he knew that his travel companion, Sora, was a spy for the shogun and had a concrete mission to accomplish. That mission was to comb Buddhist temples and Shinto shrines in search of praying *kakurekirishitan* (crypto-Christians)\(^\text{25}\).

**The last chapter of the travel diary *Oku no hosomichi*: Ōgaki, where Bashō spent time in early September 1689.**

My former student Rotsū greeted me in Port Tsuruga and accompanied me all the way to the land of Mino. He helped me with his horse, and thus we entered the city of Ōgaki. We were then joined by fleet-footed Sora, on his way back from Ise, and Etsujin galloping on his steed. We gathered in the home of my student Jokō, a vassal of Ōgaki han. Other knights were there, too – Zensen, Keikō father and son as well as many people close to me who had come to greet me day and night. And everyone seemed to want to see the one who had returned to life – full of joy, warmth yet also concern. I felt great weariness and was exhausted by the hardships of the journey, and yet – the sixth day of September I was already on my way to the temple at Ise so that, four days later, I could bow there to our gods. I boarded a boat –

\[
\text{Hamaguri no futami ni wakare iku aki zo}
\]

It is difficult

to get the meat out of clams

I’m leaving in fall

\(^\text{24}\) Cf. the verb *karonzuru* ‘to treat things too lightly, disregard, disdain’.

fig. 1. Map of the journey taken by Bashō and Sora in Narrow Road to the Deep North. The places where encounters could have occurred with kakurekirishitan (crypto-Christians), their descendents, memories and stories about them and their graves are: Sendai, Nihonmatsu and, above all, the vicinity of Aizu, the Aizune Mountains and Bandaisan*.

* See Matsuo Bashō 2002.
Bashō bares his soul to us in this passage. Rarely in his writings does he do so in such a direct manner. Seemingly contrary to the Buddhist precept of not getting attached to people because it’s a source of suffering, this teacher of “being in solitude” seeks warmth, and particularly the presence of Rotsū – a student whom others rejected, who evidently was unjustly accused of some unnamed (in the texts we have) “guilt”, about whom he made concerned inquiries in his letters, and for whom or, it seems, in whose cause he borrowed a considerable amount of money. The matter must have been urgent and extremely important, as if someone’s life were at stake. This is borne out by Bashō’s letter to Suga numa Kyokusui, which is written with great humility, nearly beseeching ly, and ends with a request for discretion. He sent it from Edo in 1693 (during a brief stay there).

As the Notes from the Hut of Spiritual Purification cited below show, Bashō needed such purification after returning from his great journey. We find out a great deal about the poet from an allusion in this text to the song of Yamazaki Sōkan about welcoming the lowest of the low, perhaps even those who “are not counted among people” (hinin). Who belonged to this group in XVII-century Japan? The eta caste – tanners, executioners, gravediggers and Christians.

**Sharakudō no ki**  
**Notes from Sharakudō hut, an abode of spiritual purification, from the hermitage of my student Chinseki**  
**March 1690**

The mountains feed your inborn nature with their silence, the rushing water soothes vehement emotions. He who lives here feels good – between the mountains and a rushing brook, between these two: silence and ceaseless motion. His

---

26 See: Muramatsu, 1985, letter no. 31. It’s addressed to a rich student from Zeze, Suga numa Kyokusui, a land owner (teishu) and co-author of a renku poem from 1694 entitled A Summer Night (Natsu no yo), who offered his beloved master the Genjūan hut on the shore of Lake Biwa. Kyokusui, a samurai’s son, was to spear a representative of the clan elders, castellan Soga Kendayū, in 1717. Bashō, who died twenty years earlier, called his pupil “a brave warrior” (yūshi Kyokusui) and used to say that he “is not an average man” (tada mono ni arazu).

27 Yamazaki Sōkan (d. circa 1539, lived about 80 years), haïka teacher and poet, compiled the first ever renga anthology in haïka style, Shinsen Inutsukubashū (New Selection of Dog poetry from Tsukuba) in his later years. Bashō and his students considered his poetry, together with the Arakida Moritake (1473–1549) anthology entitled Moritake senku [1000 Verses of Master Moritake], published in 1536, to form a kind of foundation for the haïka poetics of their own times.

28 Bashō recalls verses from the Confucian Analects (Jap. Rongo) here: “The knowing man is gladdened by brooks; the ethical man, by mountains; the knowing man is movement; the ethical man, motionlessness and silence. The knowing man enjoys life, the ethical man lives long”. That which is as steady as mountains is inborn human nature (Jap. sei); vehement emotions, unsteady passions (Jap. jō) move and flow like a mountain brook.
given name is Chinseki; his family name, Hamada. Wherever he looks, beautiful views are drawn in his eyes – which is why he composes haikai with feeling. That which is cloudy around him acquires transparence; that which is sullied begins to shine with purity. Thus his pseudonym – Sharakudō, Abode of Spiritual Puri fication. He hung a banner from his gate with the words of warning: “Scribes, erudites – stay away from my doorsill!” The funny thing was that he added one more caste to the four into which he divided his guests, our Yamazaki Sōkan, in a jocular song:

\[
\begin{align*}
Jō\text{ wa } kozu & \quad \text{Nobles – stay away} \\
chū\text{ wa } kite\text{ inu} & \quad \text{the middle class may stay in the garden} \\
ge\text{ wa } tomaru & \quad \text{the low-born may come in for the night} \\
futayo\text{ tomaru } wa & \quad \text{two nights’ accommodations} \\
ge\text{ ge no } ge\text{ kyaku}\text{ } & \quad \text{only for the lowest of the low}
\end{align*}
\]

More yet: the cottage has two rooms, each accommodating four and a half mats. Chinseki is thus heir to the simple beauty of poverty of two tea masters: Sen no Rikyū and Takeno Jōō – though not entirely, because he does not recognize their rules and precepts. When planting trees and arranging stone paths he is guided rather by lightness of heart, humor and a plain look. Returning to the landscape: the bay is like a sumptuous tray, serving up lots of treats and wonders. It has the shape of

---

29 Hamada Chinseki (1667–1737), doctor, student of Bashō in the Ōmi province school, resident of Zeze. He first met his master only in 1689. A year later (1690), during Bashō's stay in Genjū'an, at the Hut of Delusion, he had so thoroughly assimilated his master's teachings that he was able to edit Hisago (The Gourd) that year, and two years later, in Edo, the renku collection Fukagawa shū ('Fukagawa anthology'). Later he tried, though unsuccessfully, to participate in the Osaka group of Bashō students. Five years after his master’s death, he returned to Zeze, where he wrote and taught haikai in keeping with the aesthetic value of karumi. In the last years of his life, however, he lost his lightness, sense of humor and flair as he strove to conform to poetic rules too rigorously.

30 In the original, Bashō praised his student thus: kuchi ni fūga o utaete (“from his lips he was able to sing forth top-flight poetry – in spiritual and aesthetic terms, in commoner as well as aristocratic terms”).

31 Literally: “a temple in which one can wash away and cast off worldly filth”

32 In the original this is a neologism Bashō composed from two Chinese characters sounded in Japanese lection (kaiban), with the first meaning “commandment” (sanskr. śīla), and the second “decorative banner used as a sign of praise to Buddha or Bodhisatva” (sanskr. patākā).

33 This song by Sōkan is from Kokkei Taiheiki [Everything on Humor in Poetry], from a compendium of knowledge about the history of haikai, published in the late 1670s.

34 Sen no Rikyū (1522–1591), student of Takeno Jōō, sadō (tea ceremony) master, founder of the Senkeryū school and clan, creator of a style of architecture, interior design, aesthetic and ethical principles of tea culture.

35 Takeno Jōō (1502–1555), student of Murata Jukō, sadō master. He preferred tiny, ascetic rooms and plain, spare utensils for brewing and serving tea.
a sleeve between two flaps of a robe: the left-hand one, to the southeast, is Seta with its evening afterglow; the right-hand one, to the northwest, is Cape Karasaki and its rainy nights. And the sleeve, like an arm that tenderly embraces the Lake, is directed northeast toward Mikamiyama, the Three Peaks. Lake Biwa’s shape brings to mind a lute – the sough of the wind through the pine tree branches is attuned to the whisper of its waves. To the west in the distance you can see Mount Hiei, to the north of it, the lofty peak Hira, and then, behind its back, you have the peaks Otowa and Ishiyama. Pin a twig of cherry blossoms in your hair from the slopes of Nagara and you will see the pale face of the moon staring at itself in Mirror Peak – one of the Three Peaks, the one lying farthest to the east. And as a Chinese poet says\textsuperscript{36} – “everything is beautiful like delicate or strong make-up changing every day”. You can guess by now who rules Chinseki’s heart – those views, those clouds, wind, all of Nature.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
Shihō yori & this whole world \\
hanabuki irete & whirls in a storm of flowers \\
nio no nami & waves… a duck…
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Bashō

\textbf{Genjū’an no ki}

\textbf{Notes from the Hut of Delusion}

\textbf{April – July 1690}

Hidden behind the slopes of Ishiyama, behind Iwama peak, stands Mount Kokubu. Its name brings to mind the Kokubunji temples, erected for every land in the remote past. I cross narrow brooks winding at its foot, climb its steep slope and, after three hairpin turns and two hundred steps, arrive at the gate of Hachiman Temple.

Some believe that this holy statue is the incarnation of Amida Nyorai. Yet there are families for whom combining the Shintō and Buddhist religions in one holy figure is repugnant. On the other hand, how noble it is to equalize these two radiant lights. What an advantage it is for us – the dust of this world! No one is here these days, not a trace of a pilgrim. So I’m here alone. Just me and God\textsuperscript{37}. Silence. In this silence I see an abandoned hut, overgrown by mugwort\textsuperscript{38}, slanting, immersed in bamboo up to the eaves of its hole-filled roof. It gives shelter to

\textsuperscript{36} Quotation from Sū Dōng Pō (Jap. Sotōba 1036 ~1101), a Chinese poet from the era of the Northern Sung dynasty.

\textsuperscript{37} In the original: Itodo kami sabi monoshizuka naru katawara ni, sumisuteshi kusa no to ari.

\textsuperscript{38} Yomogigusa (Artemisia vulgaris)
badgers and foxes. It’s called Genjū’an, the Hut of Delusion or Dwelling of Spirits. It belongs to a monk whose name I don’t know. I know only that his uncle was my beloved student, a brave samurai named Kyokusui, from the Suganuma clan. Eight years have passed already since he left behind nothing but that nickname: The Old One Who Shares his Dwelling with Spirits.

And I? Ten years have passed already since I left the clamor of the big city, and now my fiftieth year is fast approaching. And so? I am like a moth larva in a cocoon, but without a cocoon. I am a snail who has left behind its home. I burned my face in the harsh sun of the northern provinces and on the west coast of Kisakata, I injured my heels, traversing the sandy hillocks and wild beaches of the northern sea with difficulty, finally entrusting my body and soul this year to the rocking of the quiet waves of Lake Biwa. […]

At this point Bashō gives us a full metaphor, deep poetic reflection on the paths of his own life, which I will skip here. I will only cite the ending, in which Bashō clearly states that his fate is to dwell with those who have departed this world… The strong desire to empathize with suffering, to contemplate past events, encounters and images from the year before, was not displayed in his poetic work. On the contrary: in raising his new value karumi, the lightness of seeing things just as they appear, he replaces his previous outlook with the joy that the present brings: “a clump of broad beeches in the summer”. While this is a very Buddhist approach to experiencing the world, Bashō clearly writes that he has already passed through this stage; it is also not devoid of Christian ethics, which he may have encountered on his Way.

[… ] And so I ponder in my heart the events of a lousy and vain life. There once was a time when I envied someone for his government career, and a time when I devoted myself to the teachings of Buddha behind the half-closed doors of a Zen school. Afterwards I spent years seeking beauty in the lyricism of nature, painting flowers and birds in poetry, and it was there that I saw my destiny, by finally becoming fully aware of my inability to devote my brush to tying together verses. “Like Bo Qu-Yi, who in his very bowels devoted himself to the gods of poetry, like old Du Fu I grew thin while binding speech. Though my stupidity is a far cry from their wisdom, and my writing from their verbal artistry, their fate and mine are the same – dwelling with the spirits”.

Let that be the sum of my life. I’m going to sleep.

Mazu tanomu shii no ki mo ari natsu kodachi

All I desire
are clumps of broad beeches
in the summer
After returning home, Bashō shut himself in his cottage for an entire month, not letting anyone inside. We don’t know what exactly he did at that time. His behavior cannot be attributed solely to despair over the loss of his beloved nephew… Bashō left many mournful poems, written in grief over the loss of beloved students. But not a single verse was left from this time of “closure”. Evidently he did not write poetry.

**Heikan no setsu**
**Why did I close my home?**
**July 1693**

A dissolute life disgusts the truly noble man, as Confucius wrote. Buddha, too, placed his “Do not commit adultery” one might say – at the beginning of his Five Precepts. And yet – we are helpless in the face of desires that are impossible to

---

39 The word *iro* is used in the original here, which can mean “carnal love” as well as “all deviations from the Way”, when a weak man allows himself to be seduced by the colors of the external world.
ignore. Who could? We are weak and anything can happen! Here we have a couple lying together beneath a flowering plum tree on Dark Mountain, where no eye can spy them, captivated by the fragrance above all fragrances. If not for the Sentinel who stands guard over the tortuous paths of our hidden desires, how many mistakes and downfalls would we have to experience! Or, having shared a pillow as uncertain as a wave with an alluring fisherwoman, we then tug at her kimono sleeves in despair, and it's often the case that we have to sell our house or lose our lives. We wish to live to a serene old age, yet we inflict spiritual suffering upon ourselves, greedily seeking fulfillment in food and mammon. Yet those who are unable to distinguish between good and evil, beauty and ugliness, will be forgiven far sooner. Our lives last seventy years — and not always, and we are in our prime only for about twenty. Old age, when it first comes — it’s like a dream for one night that has just passed. We weaken as we approach the age of fifty, and soon sixty draws near, and then we get uglier and uglier, closer and closer to the ground. We’re asleep by the early evening, we awake at dawn, we ruminate on something, we hunger who knows for what. The stupider we are, the more nostalgic we get. Whoever excels in the arts only multiplies his sufferings, and in the end becomes a master of counting profits and losses. Skills prove merely to be a clever means for surviving in the world — in the diabolic world of the greedy and the impoverished. The greater the anger that accumulates in our hearts in response, the deeper we sink into muddy ruts, growing too weak to return to life. As the Old Man would say in the Taoist Southern Flower Scripture: stop considering what’s worth and not worth doing; forget whether you are old or young. Seek solitude, some silence — maybe you will discover joy in your old age. Someone visits — so many unnecessary words are said. I go somewhere — I regret disturbing someone’s tranquility. But I could, like the highly esteemed Junshi, simply close the door, or like Togorō, bolt the gate. Make the absence of friends a friend; poverty, the greatest wealth; and write to yourself like a fifty-year-old boor, informing yourself what you’re banned from doing.

40 This could be a quotation from a poem by Du Fu (Jap. Jinsei nanajū korai mare nari. A human life rarely exceeds the age of seventy), as well as a simple Buddhist observation concerning impermanence. But, keeping in mind Bashō’s mastery in maintaining appearances, we cannot rule out the possibility he is referring to Psalms 90: 3–6 and 10 (Citation from the King James Bible): “[...] Thou turnest man to destruction; and sayest, Return, ye children of men. For a thousand years in thy sight are but as yesterday when it is past, and as a watch in the night. Thou carriest them away as with a flood; they are as a sleep: in the morning they are like grass which groweth up. In the morning it flourisheth, and groweth up; in the evening it is cut down, and withereth [...] The days of our years are threescore years and ten; and if by reason of strength they be fourscore years, yet is their strength labour and sorrow; for it is soon cut off, and we fly away [...]”.


42 According to Chinese legend from the XIV-century Sung Dynasty Chronicles, this man shut himself inside his home for 30 years.
Asagao ya hiru wa jō orosu mon no kaki

Convolvulus flowers
and in broad daylight
I bolt the gate in the fence

Fig 3 Chapter 5, Page 55 from Kroehler & Kroehler 2006.

This statue of the goddess Kannon, Protector of Mothers in Childbirth, portrayed with a cross that was added by 17th-century Christians hiding in northeastern Japan, symbolizes the great difficulty of analyzing texts from that period and separating Buddhist from Christian motifs. Only a good knowledge of the history of Christians during that era can provide some basis for conducting research in its literature. Such research is difficult. Difficult not only because of the political
situation of the time but even more so by the *haikai* style in which Matsuo Bashō wrote. This style, which draws support from allusions to the past, does not tolerate clear-cut statements, particularly those concerning the realities of contemporary social life. Thus, it forces readers to use their imagination and fine-tune their sensitivity to words used sparingly. These words are like flickers – immediately extinguishable. They recall the famous Mirror of the Christians⁴³ that shows a large image of the crucified Christ on a smooth rock’s surface when properly angled in relation to the sun. It’s a kind of virtual image, because a mere tremble of the hand can make it disappear.

![Image of The Kubota Kannon Statue (Yanaizu) Holding a Cross](image)

**Fig 4**

十字架を持つ柳津町久保田の安産観音像

*The Kubota Kannon Statue (Yanaizu) Holding a Cross*

---

⁴³ This treasure from the era is kept in the Museum of Crypto-Christians in a small, Japanese-style church preserved since the late 16th century standing next to the so-called Francis House (*Furanshisuko no ie*) in Kyoto. Twenty-six Japanese Christians as well as Franciscan and Jesuit missionaries were led from this church to their martyrdom (crucifixion) in Nagasaki in the winter of 1597.
Bibliography:


Matsuo Bashō, Hagiwara Yasuo kōchū 2006. Oku no hosomichi [Narrow Road to the Deep North], together with Sora tabi nikki [Sora’s travel diary] and Oku no hosomichi Sugagomo shō [Narrow Road to the Deep North – comments of a wanderer wearing a capote of leaves]. Tōkyō: Iwanami bunko.


論文の日本語レジュメ

Agnieszka Żuławska-Umeda

レジュメ

アグニエシカ・ジュワフスカ梅田

『芭蕉の奥への行脚 ― 幻住庵記をめぐって ― 』

日本古典文学の解読に必要な解釈学的な方法 (hermeneutics) を利用すると、特に十七世紀の曖昧な文学としての俳諧・俳文の言葉の深い意義を再発見することが可能になるという確信を十数年前からもつようになりました。同時に、松尾芭蕉の活動について、時代の制約や政治体制の圧力などのせいで沈黙に埋められた部分があることも考えなければならないだろうと、日本で芭蕉の足跡を旅したり資料を読んだりしながら直観的に感じたことに今でも関心があります。

検閲の厳しかったポーランドに生まれ育った私には、文字になっていない部分、つまり背後にあるものを探す癖があるようです…その癖からの思い込みかもしれないが、松尾芭蕉が生まれたのが徳川家光にはじまる強権支配の時代であったことをまず思い浮かべ、芭蕉が社会からの自由を求め、"永遠の旅"に生きていたのではないかといった感じが強くなりました。芭蕉とその俳諧・俳文（紀行文）を見ながら、彼が途中で会った人々と同情し、自然な現れ、“双葉”や“小さきものたち”、入門したばかりの弟子、“下下の下の隠れ切支丹”と親しく扱うような姿勢をあらわしていたことが分かりました。その故に、芭蕉の、句の表に出せなかった内容の豊かさを解読した上で現れた切支丹との影の出会い（出会いの匂いといえるほどの）のような余情を、ここで分かち合って、ご一緒に考えさせていただきたく思います。

Keywords: fueki ryūkō, Oku no hosomichi, wabi, shiori, karumi, haikai, kakure kirishitan, fukyo no hito, shūmon-aratame, Yaso, Genjū'an no ki, Heikan no setsu, kojiki, hinin
INTERVIEW
平野啓一郎先生インタビュー
二〇一一年十月十四日 ワルシャワ大学図書館にて
聞き手 ミコワイ・メラノヴィッチ教授

MM: 本日はインタビューに応じてくださり、誠にありがとうございます。まずは平野先生の最初のご著書「日蝕」の文体に関して、どんなテクストを参照されたのか、またその意図をお聞きしたいと思います。よろしくお願いいたします。

HK: よろしくお願いいたします。文体に関しては、作品やテーマごとに、最もふさわしい文体があると思っています。「日蝕」はラテン語で書かれているという設定ですが、十五世紀末にはパリ大学のような所でも人文主義の影響が少しずつ出始め、ラテン語が変わってきたと言われていました。僕はその文章を、明治期になって様々な概念が新しく入りながらも古典的なスタイルを守っている、明治時代の文語文の文体で表現するのがいいのではないかと思って、具体的には森鴎外の史伝の文体、「渋江抽斎」から「伊沢蘭軒」ぐらいにかけての頃の文体を念頭に置きながら書いていました。

MM: なぜこのテーマを選ばれたのですか。

HK: 当時はキリスト教社会というものが崩壊しようとしていた時期でした。戦争やペストなどがあって、神が作った世界なのにどうしてこんなに不幸なことが起こるのだ、人々の心の中に疑問が浮かび上がっていました。まだルネサンスにも入らず、新しい価値観によって社会がひとつに結び合うことができず、むしろ魔女狩りのように敵を見つけて、あるいは悪を見つけて、それに向かい合うことで共同体がもう一度一つになるようとする動きがある時代にありました。それは九十年代末に日本に生きていた僕にとって、ある意味ではシンパシーを感じるものでした。当時の日本もバブルが崩壊した後、社会が新しい価値観や方向性を見だせなくなり、ものすごく大きな停滞感の中にありました。そういう社会にいる中で、当時の中世末期のキリスト教に関する文献を読んで、非常に心を動かされたのがきっかけでした。

MM: それは当時の大学の授業と関連がありましたか。
HK: 大学の授業とは全く関係がありませんでした。ただ僕の大学の恩師は政治思想史の専門家としてハイデガーをずっと研究している先生で、西洋の政治思想史についてはその先生からずっと教えられていたので、そのことは関係していると思います。ウンベルト・エコーの「薔薇の名前」は読んでいたのですが、僕はどちらかというと、ピエール・クロソフスキーというフランス人の作家が書いた「バホメット」、それもやはり中世末期を舞台にしている小説なんですが、そちらの作品の方から強く影響を受けていると思います。

MM: では次に「葬送」についてお伺いしたいのですが、どういうきっかけで、ショパンやドラクロワを登場人物として選ばれたのですか。

HK: もともと僕は子供の時からピアノを習っていて、ショパンの音楽はよく聴いていたのですが、高校生のときに、カジミール・ヴィエールジンスキという人が書いたショパンの伝記を読みました。それがとても面白い伝記で、その伝記はショパンの偽の手紙を資料としてかなり使っているので、いまでは資料的な価値はあまりと言えていますが、ただ本としてはとても面白い本で、そのなかでドラクロワとの交流も描かれていっていました。それまではショパンの音楽にしか興味がなかったのですが、それを読んでからはショパンという人物にも興味を持つようになりました。また僕はフランス文学が好きで、特にパルザックが好きで、ちょうど同時代ということもあって、ショパンの伝記とパルザックが結びついて、この時代をテーマにしたいと思うようになりました。

MM: それまでにドラクロワの作品はご覧になっていたのですか。

HK: ドラクロワの絵を見たことはあったのですが、それよりも三島由紀夫が若い頃ドラクロワの日記が実証の書だったと言っていて、三島が読んだ日本語訳のドラクロワの日記は実はあまりよくないんですか、原書で読んでみたらやはりとても面白くて。それまでドラクロワの絵はまあ嫌いじゃないということだったのですが、日記を読んでからは、彼に興味を持つのになりました。

MM: なぜショパンがノアンからパリに戻ったその時期だけを選んだのですか。

HK: 近代が大きく動いたひとつのきっかけは、二月革命だったと思うんですね。フランスが大革命の後プルジョワジーの世界になり、それからもう一度労働者が革命を起こすのが二月革命ですが、ショパンは二月革命の翌年の一八四九年に死んでいます。彼がパリに来たのは一八三〇年ですから、七月王政期が始まった時期にぴったり重なっていて、またショパンの死が七月王政期の終わりに重なっている。そこに興味を持ったんです。また彼の最後の日々を描きたかったということもあれば、当初はショパンとドラクロワとボードレールの三人の話にしようと思っていたんです。七月王政時代はショパンが主人公で、二月革命後の第二帝政期はボードレールが主人公、その後の二つの時代を生きたのがドラクロワと
いうふうに。しかしそれをやると五千枚くらいの小説になってしまうので、誰も読めないんじゃないかと思ってやめましたけれども。

MM: そうすると「葬送」の主人公はやはりショパンと考えていいのでしょうか。

HK: 僕は二人だと思っています。ショパンはそこで亡くなってしまいますが、ドラクロワはその後生き続けますから。

MM: 明るい印象の結末に対して、物語の始まりは暗いお葬式の描写ですね。

HK: 「葬送」というタイトルにも関わりますが、やはりあのとき何かが終わったんじゃないかというのが、最初に小説を書こうとしたとき抱いていた思いなんですね。そしてショパンの死と七月王政期の終わりを重ねながら、ある時代の終わりを描きたかった。それで、彼の晩年に注目しました。

MM: 演奏会の描写は素晴らしいですね。想像だけではとても書けないと思いました。

HK: 人の死がどうして悲しいのかというのは、その人が生きていた生が惜しいからこそ、亡くなったときに悲しいんだと思うんです。だからショパンが死ぬということの意味を強調するために、生きていた彼がどんなに素晴らしいかったかということを書かないと死の意味は強調できないので、演奏会のシーンで天才ショパンの姿をどうしても描く必要がありました。

MM: ジェーン・スターリングという女性が出てきますが、彼女の存在のおかげで探偵小説の雰囲気が出てくると思います。作者にとって彼女の存在は何だったのでしょうか。

HK: そうですね、ショパンの書簡を通じてジェーン・スターリングという人を知りました。しかしショパンはやはり最後までサンドのことを気にしていたと思うんです。サンドの後、彼女がずっと面倒を見てくれますが、ショパンは最後の方ではだんだん彼女が嫌になってきてしまう。そこはなんと言うか、人間と人間の関わりの物悲しさと言うか、一方がどんなに一生懸命でもどうしようもないということだと思います。

MM: 「葬送」での本格小説の語りを構成する準備は、一人でされたのでしょうか。

HK: 資料集めは一人でやりました。当時はまだインターネットもあまり発達していなかったので、ノアンのサンドの別荘に行ってサンドの書簡全集を買ってきたり、そういうことは全部自分でした。九十年代末ポストモダンの時代に、日本の小説もちょっと行き詰まっていたんですね。小説というのがこの先どうなっていくべき
いいのか分からないという状況になっていて、その時代にもう一度、十九世紀に書かれたような本格的な小説を考え直すのが重要なんじゃないかと考えていま
した。

MM: それでは次に、三作目の「決壊」についてお伺いしたいと思います。この小説の中では日本社会や日本人について、非常に深く洞察されていると思います。まず「決壊」の題名をどう読したらいいのか教えていただけないでしょうか。

HK: 「決壊」のイメージとしては、ダムや堤防がぎりぎりまで堪えているけれども、あるとき耐えきれなくなって壊れてしまうという、そういうイメージですね。日本の社会もぎりぎりのところで何とか日常を維持していたけれども、どこかが壊れた瞬間に、バッと決壊してしまうというイメージだったんですね。

MM: 特にどういう点を強調して書かれたのでしょうか。

HK: 日本では特に、人間、特に若者たちがだんだんニヒリズムに陥って、なぜ生きているのかとか、なぜ人を殺しちゃ行けないのかとかが、二〇〇〇年代によく言われるようになりました。僕は、それはドストエフスキーがいた時代のペテルブルクによく似ていると思いました。つまり、スラブ的な価値観があった所にナポレオンが侵略し、伝統的な価値観に基づいた生活が西洋の新しい潮流に壊されて、ニヒリストの青年がペテルブルクにたくさん出てくる。そしてラスコリニコフのように、虱のような婆さんを一人殺して何が悪いのかという者が出る。その雰囲気と二〇〇〇年代に入ってからの日本の若者たちの雰囲気が、非常に近いんじゃないかなと思ったんです。

MM: 罪悪の哲学が実際に日本にも廻ってきたのでしょうか。秋葉原の事件を起こした若者もそうしたことを書いていたように思います。しかし平野さんはその前にこのことに触れておられますね。

HK: そうですね。本が発表されてから秋葉原の事件が起了したので、当時は関連づけて書かれるレビューが多かったですね。

MM: 小説は恐ろしいほど暗い印象を残すですねけれども、小説の結びの人身事件についてお話しいただけますか。

HK: 最後にどちらにも解釈できるように書いたのですが、飛び込んだと読んだ人の方が多かったですね。それはやはり日本の雰囲気だと思います。決壊というのは彼自身に起こるというのかタイトルの意図もあるんです。つまり彼はずっと理知的に自分というものを維持してきただけれども、耐えられなくなってしまう。ただそれは、本当に飛び込んでしまったのか、それとも彼の精神がおかしくなってしまったのかというのは分からないように書きました。
MM: なるほど。では次に「形だけの愛」についてお伺いしたいと思います。この題名は小説の前半と後半と、どちらにあてはまるのでしょうか。

HK: 最初と最後で意味が変わっていくのが、このタイトルですね。日本でもよく「形だけの愛ならいらない」などとよく言われるんですが、最後は二人の間の「この形だけの愛」があるんじゃないのかというように、肯定的な意味に小説を通じてだんだん変わっていくようになっていて、そういう点では確かに翻訳するのは難しいと思います。

MM: これは比較的軽い小説として書かれたのでしょうか。つまり三島のように、純文学に対して軽い小説を書くような、ある種のうねりがあるように思います。

HK: これはもともと新聞小説だったので、やはり込み入った話は書きづらいというのもありますけれども、ただこの小説は表面的には読みやすい小説にして、何度も読むと深いテーマが見えてくるように気を使って書いたんです。ですから、表面だけ読むと、二人の男女が出会って恋に落ちるという話ですねけども、そこに谷崎潤一郎などを引用しながら、陰影の部分をうまく描くというのがひとつのテーマでした。

MM: 「形だけの愛」から次の「ドーン」にかけて、「決壊」よりもずっと楽観的な部分が出てきているように思います。

HK: そうですね。「決壊」を書いた後、読んだ読者から、とても感動したけれどもこれからどうやって生きていったらいいのか分からなくなった、という感想が多く寄せられたんですね。それをやっぱり作家として考えなければならないと、そのときに強く思いました。分人という概念を思いついたのは、「決壊」の後にどうやって生きていったらいいかと考えながら、「ドーン」を書いているときに思いついた概念なんです。

MM: 最後に「ドーン」の始めと終わりに出てくる「頑張る」という言葉について、お話しいただけますか。特に大震災の後で「頑張る」という言葉は一番大事な言葉だったと思います。

HK: そうですね。「頑張る」としか言いようがないし、僕も「頑張りましょう」と言うんですけれども、それは言われた方にしては励ましでもあるけれど、プレッシャーでもあるという、そういう二面性を持っている言葉です。「ドーン」の主人公は震災後のヒーローとして祭り上げられて、そのプレッシャーの中でいろいろな事件を起こしてしまうのですけれども、最後は自分の愛する人と一緒にまた頑張るということで、個人として頑張るということから、共同性というか、人間が共に歩むということ方に価値観が移ってくるというところで、小説は幕を下ろしています。

MM: 今日は興味深いお話をお聞かせくださり、本当にありがとうございました。
REPRINTED WORKS OF POLISH JAPANEOLOGISTS
SUPERSTITIONS, MAGIC AND MANTIC PRACTICES IN THE HEIAN PERIOD – Part Two

CONTENTS

III. MAGIC .................................................................................................................. 89
1. Magic: intended aims .................................................................................... 90
   1.1. Preventive practices ........................................................................ 91
   1.2. Evocative practices ....................................................................... 110
   1.3. Destructive magic .......................................................................... 116
2. Magic: instruments ........................................................................................... 121
   2.1. Liturgical objects ........................................................................... 121
   2.2. Military equipment ......................................................................... 122
   2.3. Plants ............................................................................................. 122
   2.4. Specifically magic objects ............................................................... 123
   2.5. Parts of the human body ................................................................. 124
   2.6. Words ............................................................................................. 134
3. Magic: human agents ...................................................................................... 125

IV. MANTIC PRACTICES ................................................................................... 138
1. Divination proper ............................................................................................ 139
   1.1. Clairvoyance ................................................................................... 139
   1.2. Physiognomy .................................................................................. 141
   1.3. Astrology and horoscopy ................................................................. 142
   1.4. Divination by the Book of Change .................................................. 144
   1.5. Mixed and miscellaneous mantle practices ...................................... 145
2. Interpretation of dreams and omens ............................................................... 148
   2.1. Dreams ......................................................................................... 148
   2.2. Omens ........................................................................................... 155

V. CONCLUSIONS ................................................................................................. 159
The bibliographic data of all primary sources are given in the Bibliography. In quotations within the text in case of diaries and chronicles only the dates of entries are given. In case of tales in such collections as the Reiiki or Konjaku monogatari, the number of the scroll is given in Roman numerals followed by the number of the tale in Arabic numerals. It follows the custom prevailing in Japanese editions.

The names of the governmental organs are written with capital letters, whereas the titles of officials – with small letters. But whenever a title forms the second component of a cognomen (e.g. Sei Shōnagon, Izumi Shikibu), it is written with a capital letter.

If not stated otherwise, all translations within the text are by the present author.
All magic actions have as their purpose the desire to exert an influence on the course of events by occult control of spirits or of nature. They must be distinguished from actions of religious character, although they often show superficial similarities to each other. The basic difference lies in the rationale and the intention behind an act. If people make offerings and humbly pray for rain or to ward off pestilence, then they perform ritual religious acts. If people try to ward off the devil by chasing or destroying it, then they perform an act of magic. In the first instance people put themselves in the position of supplicants inferior to the powers they invoke. In the second case they believe in their ability to control supernatural powers and they act as masters of the situation.

All magic acts were based on pragmatic premises. They constituted primitive forms of human endeavour to control the world. The intention behind them could have been constructive, destructive or preventive, but their intended results were always useful from the point of view of the perpetrator. To ensure longevity, health and wealth for oneself or to kill an enemy – was useful and practical if it could have been obtained by simple acts of magic. At the basis of magic practices there were various mistaken ideas on relations between objects, human beings, and supernatural powers, and there was a strong belief that man could use these relations and turn them to his own benefit. Among the illusions and mistaken ideas was the conviction that human thoughts and intentions could have special power (creative or destructive). This conviction often decided whether some action was rational in itself or if it was an irrational, magic one. If a man washed his body with the simple intention of cleaning himself, then his bath was a rational action. But if the same man stood under the shower of a waterfall in order to take away spiritual dirt or a disease, then his action was irrational. If a lady rubbed herself with petals of a flower with the intention of saturating her body with a nice smell, then her action was completely rational. But if she rubbed herself with the same petals in order to ensure longevity or health, then she was acting magically.
Magic can be examined in various aspects and for different purposes. From our point of view the most important purpose is in finding the role that magic played in Heian society. It is not quite simple because many magic practices were kept secret and were not recorded, and even if they were, very often a detailed description is lacking. In some practices we can only guess their magic character as it was not explained in the sources what intention the practices had.

We would like to present magic of the Heian period in three aspects: 1) magic practices from the point of view of their intended aim; 2) instruments of magic practices; 3) people performing acts of magic. As there does not exist a generally accepted terminology we feel free to introduce such terms as seen most adequate.

1. Magic: intended aims

It has already been stated that every magic action has as its purpose some kind of profit from the point of view of the person employing it. The profit may be expected in the form of evoking some positive results, directly profitable for the person concerned and not overstepping the limits of common decency and moral code of the society. On the other hand, the profit may be expected in a form harmful or destructive for a personal or public enemy. In such a case the result of a magic action must be negative from the point of view of at least one person, the person who is not the agent but the object of a magic action. If the person is a public enemy, then destroying him (or her) may be even considered positive within the limits of the moral code. But then the intended aim is not constructive, in fact, it is clearly destructive although useful from the point of view of the society.

In Japan of the Heian period both kinds of magic – constructive and destructive – were employed in private as well as in public interest. But, quite obviously, destructive magic in private interest had a secret life, not easily revealed and rarely spoken about. Accordingly, there are not so many recorded incidents of this kind. Constructive magic, on the other hand, was employed openly and many of its forms were included into the annual calendar of the court or particular shrines. From those sources may arise the striking disparity between the documentation of both kinds. Another disproportion may be seen within the category of constructive magic where the group of evocative practices is incomparably smaller than the group of preventive practices. At first sight it may seem that the Japanese of the Heian period were much more concerned with avoiding evil than with creating good.

As may be evident from the above written remarks, we propose to divide magic practices into two categories, “constructive” and “destructive”, and further on, within the “constructive” category, to subdivide the practices into “evocative” and “preventive” groups. As the last group is the biggest one, we shall begin our review with it.
1.1. Preventive practices

Preventive practices have as their aim warding off or avoiding evil which revealed itself in the multifarious forms of demons, mononoke, malicious influence, diseases, etc. The practices were based on a belief that it was possible to: 1) exonerate evil spirits; 2) frighten them away; 3) deceive them; 4) bribe them; 5) bar the way to them; or 6) avoid any contact with them. These each have to be described separately.

1.1.1. Exoneration of evil spirits

The methods applied in purifying or exonerating people from evil belonged to the mixed tradition of Shintō, Buddhism and Ommyōdō. Some of the methods were purely Shintoist or purely Buddhist, while others were syncretic. The oldest Japanese ceremony called ōharae (great purification) was performed twice a year (on the last days of the 6th and of the 12th moons) and its purpose was to purify the whole nation of all impurities (kegare) and sins (tsumi). It was a very solemn ceremony performed by Shintoist priests over a river or a stream. The central ceremony was held in the capital on the shore of the Kamogawa. The impurities to be washed away were symbolized in shapes of paper human figures, which were called hitokata (human shape) or katashiro (shape substitute). The hitokata were rubbed over the body and then floated on the river. By this action, it was believed, all the impurities were transferred\(^1\) to the hitokata and washed away. Much more elaborate figures called agamono – offerings of atonement were prepared for the imperial family. These were big dolls of exactly the size of the Emperor, the Empress and the Crown Prince. Taking measurements, making and dressing the dolls became known as yoori – “breaking between joints” because measuring the Emperor and his family was executed by breaking a bamboo stick to a suitable length. The ceremony of ōharae is well documented in the whole of Heian literature. The yoori is described by Sei Shōnagon\(^2\).

Besides ōharae, which was held regularly in half-yearly intervals, there were other forms of preventive purification derived from Shintō ritual and connected with the dynastic cult. After coming to the throne every new Emperor had to perform a grand ceremony called daijōe or daijōsai (great festival of thanksgiving). For the duration of every reign two unmarried imperial princesses were chosen to the offices of high priestess of the Ise shrine (saigū), and high priestess of the Kamo shrine (saiin). Before the daijōe the Emperor and both priestesses were subjected

---

1 Rubbed in, hence the name for this kind of hitokata was nademono – a thing for rubbing.
2 Makura no sōshi 1958:209.
to prolonged ceremonies of purification (ōharae). Furthermore, the priestesses were purified for a year before taking their respective offices in Ise and Kamo. The saigū was fasting and praying in a special temporary palace (No no miya – Palace in the fields) at Sagano, the saiin at Murasakino.

Another kind of harae reserved for the aristocracy was called nanasebarai (purification of seven rapids). This was performed by means of nademono dolls with the Emperor represented by seven deputies. The nanasebarai is mentioned in the Genji monogatari, Ochikubo monogatari and Kagerō nikki.

There were also many other kinds of “syncretic” harae/gejo performed by ommyōji. Some of them were regular, others sporadic, performed in case of a special need. One of the regular harae was held on the first day of the snake in the 3rd moon. Sei Shōnagon classified this ceremony as “a thing with strong appeal” (kokoro yuku mono) if the officiating “ommyōji had a fluent tongue and going to the river beach performed the rite of exoneration from evil influence” (mono yoku iu ommyōji shite, kawara ni idete, zuso no harae shitaru3). This zuso (or juso, or suso) no harae was of a special kind. It was intended as a counteraction against any eventual damages ensuing from curses. It was performed on the river-bank and consisted of “washing away” evil influence (Shintoist element) and of reciting spells (zuso – Ommyōdō element). Such a kind of harae was very popular, it seems, as there are many mentions of it throughout the literature of the period. In the Midō kampaku ki there are scores of entries concerning harae (gejo). Michinaga himself was possibly oversensitive, but whenever something out of the ordinary happened, he summoned ommyōji (Kamo Kōei, Abe Seimei, and others) and ordered rites of exoneration. He had many enemies and could easily suspect that they would wish him harm. In his opinion it was prudent to be on alert and he did not spare any expenses in order to defend himself – after the services he gave handsome allowances to the ommyōji.

To a different category of exonerations belonged various Buddhist rites. While religious, they were very important in the magic sense. There were also regular and sporadic ones. To the regular ceremonies belonged mizuho (misuho) performed from the 8th day of the 1st moon for seven days. The ceremony consisted of reading sacred scriptures at one, two, three, five, seven or more altars. Depending on the intention there were different kinds of scriptures to be read: sokusai – exonerating evil, zōyaku – bringing luck, keiai – evoking love4, chōbuku (chōfu) – expelling evil and others. According to the occasion the rites could be ordered in more or less elaborate forms, and depending on need, the choice of scriptures could differ. In any case, regular or sporadic reading of scriptures was based on a strong belief in the spiritual power of holy words, and treated, in fact, as magic spells.

---

3 Ibid., 73.
4 Zōyaku and keiai should be properly included into the evocative practices.
Another form of purifying oneself was executed by fasting (sōjin). For the Buddhist clergy there were designated six days in every month, but in the 1st, 5th and 9th moons the periods of fasting were longer. For laymen there were no obligatory periods of abstinence, but they could undertake fasting if they wished to do penance for some sins. During the period of abstinence the people had to avoid any contact with ritually impure objects or persons and had to avoid any actions which would defile them physically or ritually\(^5\).

1.1.2. Frightening away evil spirits

This group of practices is the biggest one. Here belong highly variegated methods ranging from the simplest acts of shouting to the most complicated ceremonies demanding services of trained specialists. The Japanese demons had their idiosyncrasies and people profited from the knowledge of those weak points in the demons’ armour. The demons were supposed to be afraid of loud noise, weapons (swords, bows, spears), spells and incantations, of a Chinese deity called Shōki, and of some objects so repulsive to them, that they would escape from the vicinity of the repulsive things.

A regular annual ceremony was held at the court on the last day of a year. The ceremony was called tsuina (nayarai, oniyarai) – expelling demons. The first time it was performed successfully was during a pestilence in 706, and later on it became one of the regular court ceremonies (nenjū gyōji). The Emperor made his appearance in the Shishinden pavilion where all the ministers and other secular and priestly dignitaries were present. The chief of the Otoneri bureau acted as the hōsōji (or hōsōshi) – the master of ceremonies at this particular event. He donned an impressive costume of black and red, he wore on his head a quadrangular golden headdress, and in his right hand he brandished a spear (hoko), in his left – a shield (tate). Followed by twenty pages he strutted into the garden beating the shield with the spear. The pages made awesome noise hitting their drums. Other officials twanged bow-strings and shot arrows from special bows made of peach-wood and arrows made of rush. The hōsōshi drove away devils shouting with all his might. Meanwhile masters of Ommyōdō recited spells (zumon or jumon) against the demons.

In this very uproarious ceremony several methods hateful to demons were used: shouting, display of weapons, and spells. The peach-wood and rush were especially repulsive to demons on account of unpleasant associations. The Japanese participants probably did not know the source of the demons’ abhorrence. The belief came to Japan from China at the time when even the Chinese themselves had already

\(^5\) The sōjin practices were also employed by ascetics as preparatory for achieving a supernatural power.
forgotten the original source of it. The legend explaining it was written down in the 1st century in the *Lunheng* (Doctrines Evaluated) by Wang Ch’ung. The pertinent part reads as follows: “In the midst of the eastern sea there is the Tu-so (Crossing the New Year) Mountain, on which there is an enormous peach tree, which twists and coils its way over a distance of three thousand li. Between its branches, on the north-east, there is what is called the Gate of Demons (*kuei men*), in and out of which pass myriad demons. Above, there are two divine beings, one called Shen Shu, the other Yü Lü. They watch and control the myriad demons, and those that are evil and harmful they seize with rush ropes and feed to tigers.”⁶ The peach-wood and rush were used in Japan, as well as in China, for making objects of magic use (e.g. peach-wood bows and rush arrows, peach-wood talismans, rush brooms – for expelling demons). The same Chinese legend explains the Japanese custom of displaying a tiger’s head (artificial, of course) during the ceremony of the first bath (*oyudono no gishiki*). There are detailed descriptions of the ceremony in the diary of lady Murasaki, in the *Eiga monogatari* and *Midō kampaku ki*. When the infant was put into the bathtub, one lady in attendance kept a sword in front of him, another – a tiger’s head. They held the objects in such a way that they were reflected in the water. Meanwhile young lords scattered rice (which was also repulsive to demons) and twenty men of the imperial guard twanged the bowstrings. Buddhist monks recited *darani*. The recitation was accompanied by magic gestures (*in, inzō, inshō mudra*)⁷.

The pictures of the above mentioned Shōki were considered to be strong apotropaic means repulsive to demons. In the Emperor’s living quarters, in the chamber called Oninoma (devil’s chamber) of the Seiryōden pavilion there was a picture with an image of Shōki in the act of killing a demon. There are various versions of the Shōki legend (which is also of Chinese origin). We shall quote one of them after de Groot. “The Emperor Ming, while suffering from fever, was sleeping in the daytime, and dreamed that a tiny spectre snatched his gold embroidered smelling satchel and his flute of jade. The Emperor asked it who it was. ‘I am Hi-hao,’ it said; ‘I can ruin people, and convert their pleasures into sorrows.’ The Emperor flew into a passion and was on the point of calling his warriors, when his eye fell upon a large spectre with a hat, a deep blue gown, a girdle and court boots, which seized the spectre, plucked out its eyes, tore it to pieces, and devoured it. ‘Who are you?’ asked the Emperor; and the answer was: ‘I am a literary graduate of the highest rank from Tsung-nan, named Chung-khwei; in the Wu teh period (618–627) I was not promoted to the rank which I deserved, and therefore committed suicide by knocking my head against the stone steps; I then received from the emperor a green gown to wear in the grave, and therefore in gratitude swore that I would thenceforth

---

⁶ Quoted after Bodde 1975:128.
⁷ Murasaki Shikibu niki 1958:452 and others.
remove from the emperor's illness and evil caused by Hi-hao. On these words the emperor awoke from his dream and his disease was cured”\(^8\).

De Groot states further on that “the greatness of his fame is displayed by the fact that it has found its way into Japan, where to this day he has, under the corrupted name of Shoki (Shōki), held a position in life and custom which perhaps exceeds in importance his role in China itself. In Japan his images are far from having lost in all respects the features of the Chinese prototype; they represent him, indeed, as kicking spectres with his foot, sabring them, dragging them by their hair, throttling or devouring them, or dealing with them in yet other cruel and pitiless fashions such as imagination may suggest”\(^9\).

Twangling the bow-strings (tsuruuchi, meigen, yuminarashi) served the purpose of frightening away demons. It was performed on special occasions (such as confinement, first bath, illness), but also daily in the palace. Every night at the hour of the boar (between ten and midnight) there was a roll call of courtiers and a parade of imperial guards. It was accompanied by twangling the bow-strings. The noise was believed to drive away all the devils that might have been lurking in the vicinity of the imperial private quarters. During a thunderstorm a similar parade of imperial guards called kannari no jin (guards of the thunder) was held in front of the Seiryōden and Shishinden pavilions.

Darani may be translated as recitations of sutras. They were recited in their original language – Sanskrit, which must have been especially moving to listeners who did not understand one word of the text. As the sutras were read not for the educational purposes but only as magic formulae, it did not matter whether anybody understood them. Sometimes translated fragments (sōji) were read, too. The darani and sōji recitations were treated very often also as curative spells. This practice was based on simple logic – if the mystic power of the recitation expels the evil spirit from the sick person then the person automatically will return to normal condition. Other kinds of curative spells were called kaji and kitō. The power of spells was reinforced by magic gestures called in (inzō, inshō, mudras). For the gestures both hands were used with fingers bent into various figures.

An episode in the Genji monogatari describes the treatment of Genji (for ague) by a holy man on the Kitayama mountain (the holy man held a rank of daitoko). He was famous for his proficiency in magic. His skill was not limited to curative spells only, but he also practiced the gengata (gengata wo okonai...) – a kind of sorcery intended for gaining worldly profits. At the beginning of Genji’s treatment the daitoko wrote out talismans (gofu) and administered them (the text has the word sukasu to “cause drinking”; it seems that Genji had to swallow the gofu). Then

\(^8\) de Groot 1910:1176.  
\(^9\) Ibid., 1180.
the daitoko read some spells (kaji)\(^\text{10}\). The next night the daitoko sent Genji off for a walk, staying himself in his hermitage in order to work quietly on more powerful spells because a mononoke had appeared in addition to Genji’s ague\(^\text{11}\). Few days later Genji was cured, but the daitoko, for a good measure, applied the guardian spell (goshin) which consisted of recitation of darani and making magic gestures. He also presented the patient with a mace (toko) as a talisman\(^\text{12}\).

Arthur Waley in the excellent though fairly free translation of the Genji monogatari gives the following commentary on the guardian spell. “The ministrant holds the palms of his hands together with middle finger touching and extended, first fingers separated and bent, tips of thumbs bunched together, and third fingers in line with middle fingers so as to be invisible from in front. With hands in this sacred pose (mudra) he touches the worshipper on forehead, left and right shoulder, heart and throat. At each contact he utters the spell: ON BASARA GONJI HARAJUBATA SOHAKA which is corrupt Sanskrit and means: ‘I invoke thee, thou diamond-fiery very majestic star’. The deity here invoked is Vairocana, favourite Buddha of the Mystic Sect\(^\text{13}\). Waley does not, unfortunately, give the source of his explanation.

In the second chapter of this work (superstitions) there were given several examples of warding off evil with swords and bows. There was Tokihira frightening away Michizane’s mononoke appearing in the form of thunder. There was Kaneie ordering “something invisible” to roll up the lattice on the window. There was unfortunate Narihira standing with his bow all night scaring away thunder. There was also Tadahira who stayed at night in the palace. All of a sudden he perceived the presence of an evil spirit behind the Emperor’s seat in the Shôshinden pavilion. The spirit caught Tadahira’s sword by the handle. Tadahira groped along the handle and his hand found another hand – hairy, with long sharp claws. He swiftly drew his sword and scared the devil away\(^\text{14}\).

There are many similar stories showing different sorts of demons in deadly fright of swords and bows. It seems that only the ikisudama of lady Rokujō was not frightened by Genji’s performance with a sword. But perhaps she had already finished doing mischief when Genji tried to expel her with his weapon. Poor Yûgao had already been in agony.

The rite of scattering rice was already mentioned twice; on the occasion of the first bath ceremony, and in the story from Konjaku monogatari about the nurse expelling small riders from the haunted chamber. As the conclusion of the story it is told that with children around, it should be customary to perform uchimaki (rice scattering). That rice or other grain scattering (mamemaki) was thought a strong

\(^\text{11}\) Ibid., 183.
\(^\text{12}\) Ibid., 196.
\(^\text{13}\) Waley 1960:90, footnote 1.
\(^\text{14}\) Ōkagami 1967:84.
apotropaic measure is evident from many mentions of the custom in novels as well as in diaries. In the Genji monogatari there is the episode of Yūgiri returning home late at night and finding his wife in great agitation over their sick baby. He takes then a handful of rice and scatters it casually over the floor. Quoting this fragment Morris remarks: “Yūgiri scatters the rice to drive away evil spirits, much as we might spray a room with disinfectant”\textsuperscript{15}.

The comparison of the role of magic apotropaion to the role of modern disinfectant seems to be very suitable. It should also be noted, however, that Yūgiri performing the customary action of rice scattering expressed his amusement at the wife’s exaggerated belief in devilish power. Here again we can see lady Murasaki’s quiet irony in regard to supernatural powers.

Sei Shōnagon sometimes had also lapses into irony. Her description of a woman working over a sick child is very ironical, indeed. The woman in question was a quack of native origin and tradition. She worked her “miracles” using Shintoist gohei (strips of paper serving as offerings) and mumbling spells\textsuperscript{16}. Possibly Sei Shōnagon did not like the woman or believed shamanic practices of Shintoist tradition too naive in comparison to more intricate Buddhist services. Anyhow, she mentions several times, and even describes in detail, Buddhist practitioners at work, being then quite serious about them. There is, for example, a long description of expelling a mononoke from a sick person.

A monk gorgeously dressed brought with him a young girl serving as a medium (yorimashi). The monk started reciting darani and soon afterwards the girl began to tremble and lose consciousness. She sobbed and tossed around feverishly. To everybody present, it became obvious that her behaviour reflected the torment of the mononoke relentlessly driven away by the power of darani. At last the monk subdued the mononoke completely and forced it to humble apology. Then he stopped his ministration. The yorimashi awoke from her trance. Her hair and dress were disheveled, her face red and tear stained. She felt ashamed of her appearance and wanted to escape, hiding her face in her long hair. But the monk stopped her and for some time recited kaji. Eventually, the sick person became a little better, but the monk stated that the mononoke belonged to a very obstinate kind and it would be necessary to be cautious for some time\textsuperscript{17}.

In this case the mononoke was finally driven away. But it happened sometimes that all the ministrations were to no avail. In another fragment Sei Shōnagon gives a description of a monk’s failure. There came an exorcist (genza, genja) and very haughtily began his preparations. He also brought a yorimashi with him. He handed over his mace (toko, tokko) and rosary (zuzu, juzu) to the yorimashi and started

\textsuperscript{15} Morris 1964:135, footnote 3.
\textsuperscript{16} Makura no sōshi 1958:272.
\textsuperscript{17} Ibid., 327–8.
summoning a guardian demon (gohō), who should enter the sick person’s body and inform the monk about the reason of the illness. Then the monk would know what spells were the most proper. But in this case the demon refused to appear and the exorcism ended in failure.\footnote{Ibid., 66.}

A ceremony of sacred readings to Five Great Venerable (Go daison no mizuhō) was ordered during national calamities (such as flood, famine, pestilence) if considered to have been caused by vengeful spirits and also with the intention of expelling demons at such occasions as the Empress’ confinement or installation of the Crown Prince. Five altars were made for the ceremony and on each of them was placed an image of one of the Five Great Venerables: in the centre Fudō myōō, with Gosanze myōō, Gunjari yasha, Daitoku myōō and Kongō yasha on the east, south, west and northern altars respectively. They were deities of the esoteric Shingon pantheon, and their function was to scare away all the enemies of Buddhism. Hence, their representations in painting and sculpture show them as very fierce figures, and hence their role in the rites intended for ejecting all possible demons.

There is a very impressive description of the Godaison in the Murasaki Shikibu nikki on the occasion of Empress Akiko’s confinement. The Empress was a daughter of Michinaga, the most powerful dignitary, then at the peak of his career. He did not spare any effort or expense in order to secure a safe child-birth for his daughter. The Godaison ceremony was magnificent, but that was not all. There were also fudan no midōkyō performed. It was the constant reading of scriptures for day and night. Besides, many high dignitaries of Buddhist church were invited. They shouted and screamed till their voices grew hoarse, all in order to expel demons. Their voices – remarks the authoress – must have reached to all the Buddhas of past, present and future worlds. Side by side with the monks there prayed and recited spells various shamans and ommyōji who came in great crowds. Lady Murasaki again remarks ironically that it had been impossible for the eight millions of Shintoist deities not to hear their incantations. Messengers were running all night to temples with orders to read sutras. Rice in the Empress’ chamber was scattered in such a quantity that it looked as if snow had fallen.\footnote{Murasaki Shikibu nikki 1958:447–51.}

In case of a confinement all actions were intended as preventives against eventual demons. In case of the goryōe in 863 the demons had already been very much in evidence. It was decided then that the vengeful spirits causing national calamities belonged to six persons: Sudō tennō (Sawara), Iyo shinnō, Fujiwara fujin, Fujiwara Nakatada, Tachibana Hayanari and Fumimuro Miyatamaro. As it has already been mentioned, after that first ceremony performed in the Shinsen’en, goryōe came to be celebrated annually in various shrines. The central ceremony sponsored by the imperial house was held on the 14th day of the 6th moon in the Yasaka jinja.
The annual ceremonies were of a preventive character, they were not addressed to any particular spirit, but were intended to pacify vengeful spirits in general. They became more and more elaborate. There were horse races and horse parades, sacred dances and processions with garlanded spears (hoko). In time, the ceremonies changed into occasions for merry-making and for display of magnificent decorations. They came to be considered festivities in honour of Susanoo, the deity enshrined at Yasaka, and the primary intention has been lost. But the initial offerings and display of the hoko and other military utensils point out to the intention of frightening off vengeful spirits. The spears were not offered to the spirits for their amusement.

There were yet other simpler means of guarding oneself against bad influence. Various kinds of spells (shu or ju, jumon, etc.) were certainly effective, but they were reserved mostly for specialists. Ordinary people called experts in emergency only, while in everyday life they protected themselves with amulets. The amulets were of various kinds. There were, for example, amagatsu – little dolls made of paper in the shape of a child, and dressed in children's costumes. The amagatsu were put somewhere near to the baby soon after its birth, and later on were kept under the pillow, sometimes as long as 30 years. Other dolls (hitokata) were used also for various purposes, depending on the intention of the owner. The most popular were gofu distributed by Shingon priests. The gofu could be made of paper or strips of wood. Some spells were written on them against particular evils. They were carried on the body or swallowed (like in the case of Genji).

Still another kind of apotropaion was originally reserved for the Emperor and his family, but later on its popularity spread among the aristocracy. On the 1st day of the hare of the 1st moon the Emperor, his primary consort and the heir apparent were presented with sticks of seven trees cut to the length of 5 shaku 3 sun (uzue – hare sticks). The sticks (among them was that of peach tree) were believed to protect against demons. It seems that the ceremony was performed for the first time in 688 when empress Jitō was presented with an uzue by the officials of Daigakuryō. Since then it became an annual event. On the same day as uzue, there were also given to the Emperor hare mallets (uzuchi) prepared by exorcists of the Tendai and Shingon sects. The wands were made of wood and ornamented with tassels. Similar sticks and mallets were obtained by courtiers, and their mansions were decorated with them.

Out of these ancient goryōe ceremonies has developed the most gorgeous of Japanese festivals – the Gion matsuri.

It is a matter for discussion if spears and arrows used for such and similar occasions were treated simply as weapons able to kill demons. It does not seem impossible that they were used in their role of phallic symbols, and as such were believed to ward off all dark powers threatening life.

In today’s Japan one may see crowds of people buying in every temple New Year’s tasseled mallets (made of paper). Even now they are believed to keep away evil and bring good luck to Japanese homes.

1.1.3. Deceiving evil spirits

It was believed possible to deceive evil spirits with certain tricks. Let us return once more to the impressive description of Empress Akiko’s confinement. Besides all the rites mentioned above, there was applied a trick for leading astray any likely *mononoke* or other demons who would wish to do harm to the Empress or the infant. On the west side of the Empress’ courtains of state, ladies were placed who acted as “substitutes” (*omononoke utsuritaru hitobito* – “women for transmitting *mononoke* on”). They had to pretend that they were in child-birth. At the side of each of them there was an exorcist (*genza*) shouting as loudly as if he protected a woman truly giving birth to a baby. The ladies were expected to take on themselves every evil spirit who otherwise might endanger the Empress’ confinement.

After the Empress happily gave birth to a boy it came out that, in fact, there had been a danger from a *mononoke*. One of the exorcists (*azari* Chisō) assigned to a lady substitute became possessed and it was necessary to take care of him. Another exorcist, *azari* Nenkaku, had to expel the *mononoke* from Chisō. But the ladies were unharmed and they felt disappointed.

Other specialists were also present: *yorimashi*, and *genza* called *ogihito*. They did not act as substitutes, but their function served the same ultimate purpose: to protect the Empress and the infant. They did it by inviting *mononoke* to enter into themselves. During the afterbirth lady Murasaki heard lamenting voices of *mononoke* uttered by possessed *yorimashi*.

In the case of the Empress or other lady of high rank it was usual to employ substitutes from among the ladies in attendance. But in the families of lower ranks it was impossible, even if the fear of *mononoke* was as strong as in the palace or aristocratic mansions. The poorer families had to take recourse in artificial substitutes, e.g., in the form of *hitokata* dolls.

1.1.4. Bribing evil spirits

The simplest forms of bribe were offerings to deities and demons. But it should be distinguished between an offering as a bribe and an offering as an expression of reverence or gratitude. The second category belongs to religion, while the first one to magic. Here the intention becomes the decisive factor.
In the story about two girls of the same name, Nunoshiki, there were mentioned offerings to a deity of disease, and an attempt at bribing the devil who came for the girl from Yamada. The devil was eager to be bribed, but, unfortunately for the girl, King Emma wrecked the devil's prospects. The story is summed up in two conclusions: it is better not to hurry with the cremation of a corpse; and second, it is useful to prepare offerings near an ill person as the devils might possibly be open to bribery.

In another story the devils were successfully bribed. A man from Nara, Tachibana Iwashima, borrowed some money from the Daianji temple. He went to Echizen where he made a good business. While returning back to Nara he fell ill. Feeling very poorly he hastened on his journey. One day he became aware that three unknown men were following him. After some time the men caught up with him and they introduced themselves as devils sent by Emma to arrest Iwashima's soul. As they had followed Iwashima over a big stretch of the country, they were tired and hungry. Iwashima gave them food from his travelling supplies and invited them to his home in Nara. There he made a feast and asked the devils to spare his life. “Nothing doing” – said the devils – “unless you find a substitute”. Iwashima did find a substitute – an old man from the nearby shrine. The devils grabbed the man. Before parting with Iwashima they asked him for sutras to be read for their sake. Iwashima consented gladly and ordered the sutras in the Daianji temple. Three days later the devils came again, this time to express their gratitude. Iwashima lived to be ninety.

Offerings as a method of bribe were available for everybody. Other methods were at the Emperor’s disposal only. As it has already been mentioned, vengeful spirits were pacified by means of goryōe, harae, etc. If the spirits were especially obstinate and malicious they were given ranks and even – like Michizane – deified, or – like prince Sawara – nominated posthumously to the highest dignity of Emperor. The deities were not always satisfied with their ranks. In the Nihon kiryaku there are many entries concerning an advancement in rank of one or another deity. There is, for example, an entry under the date of the 14th day of the 10th moon of 987 stating that the gods Sumifurigami and Hayabusagami of the Higashi Sanjō mansion were given the lower fourth rank of the second grade. This short entry may be associated with the story in the Eiga monogatari about the illness of ex-Empress Akiko (Senshi). She suffered because she had abscesses on her body which, at first, were thought a result of some mononoke’s activity. The abscesses burst and everybody concerned felt relieved. But it soon appeared that the mononoke still exerted its malicious influence. Not only did not the ex-Empress return to her normal condition, but the mononoke got hold of four or five other people. It was decided then that perhaps the illness was caused by a curse (tatari) of domestic gods. Eventually the gods, Sumifuri and Hayabusa, were given ranks.

---

24 Eiga monogatari 1964:1,228.
The deities were probably very obstinate and exacting ones as there are other entries in the Nihon kiryaku: on the 5th day of the 4th moon of 1006, the deities’ rank was raised to the upper second, and on the 4th day of the 1st moon of 1150 it was raised again, this time to the highest first rank.

The reasons behind deities’ demands could be of various kinds. It is difficult to ascertain what and to what kind of actions prompted Sumifuri and Hayabusa in 1006 and 1150. But in the case of another god, Munakata myōjin, the reason is clearly explained in the Ōkagami. The god’s abode was at Kande kōji street, south of Kōichijō avenue. At Kōichijō was also the residence of Fujiwara Tadahira. Munakata myōjin was obviously jealous of his powerful neighbour and revealed his resentment at having a lower rank than Tadahira. The god’s words were communicated to Tadahira who arranged the rank of Munakata to be raised.

The devils of hell were bribed with offerings of food, the deities of Japanese derivation were given ranks. It may strike one as being symptomatic of deeply rooted trends in Japanese society. Making gochisō (“entertainment”) for somebody up to this day is an elegantly camouflaged bribe. Ranks in the rigidly stratified Heian society were most earnestly coveted symbols of social status, and this trend has not disappeared up to the present day, although the principle of stratification has changed.

### 1.1.5. Barring the way to evil spirits

Here we would like to recall the story of Suzaku tennō who had to stay in a closed room behind his courtains of state for three years. In this manner he was believed to be cut off from access of the Kitano deity (Michizane). In Sei Shōnagon’s report on the demon appearing in the main room, it is said that the Empress changed her chamber and in the new one a screen was put along the southern verandah. In this case the screen was probably intended as a barrier against demons, as it was believed that the southeastern direction was the most dangerous. Demons often came from there.

In the story from Konjaku monogatari about the arrival of a demon foreseen by the ommyōji, the people concerned prepared themselves by closing all doors and windows. They protected their house like against a thief, which was a mistake on their part, as the demon entered through the chimney. It seems that in later times people became more careful and remembered about closing all openings like chimneys and even keyholes. In the Heian period the method of barring the way to evil spirits was the most primitive one and often depended simply on closing doors and windows, and exposing outside some object repulsive to demons (e.g. an object

---

25 Ōkagami 1967:84.
made of peach-wood, a picture of Shōki, a picture of some terrible creatures, etc.). It concerns, certainly, mostly ordinary people, not skilled in magic of higher grade. The specialists from the ommyōji ranks (or other magicians) had at their disposal much more sophisticated methods. They could shut themselves off from demons by becoming invisible.

One day Abe Seimei followed the carriage of his master in magic, Kama Tadayuki. The latter, lulled by the monotonous rhythm of oxen’s steps, dozed off sitting inside. All of a sudden, Seimei saw demons gathering in front with the intention of attacking sleeping Tadayuki. Seimei woke up his master, who at once recited proper spells and became invisible. The demons were bewildered, one may suppose.

The drawing of a “magic circle”, so popular among various Slavic tribes, can also be met in Japan. The circle shut off the person standing within it from any evil spirits. The “drawing” could be executed not necessarily by actually making a circle on the ground with some instrument. It was sufficient for preventive purposes to walk around a place holding something repulsive to evil spirits or reciting spells. The place in this manner encircled with spells formed a zone invisible to evil spirits. As a good illustration of the point may serve yet another story from the Konjaku monogatari.

After Montoku tennō’s death a group of officials was delegated to find a proper place for the imperial mausoleum. As the chief of the expedition was chosen Abe Yasuhito, and as an adviser – a very learned ommyōji, Shigeoka Kawahito. On their way back from the country Kawahito, displaying sings of great anxiety, informed the chief that they had made a grave mistake and they encroached upon land of the tsuchi no kami god (the god, called also Tokujin, led a quite nomadic kind of life; it stayed in spring inside a hearth, in summer – in the gate of a residence, in autumn – inside a well, and in winter – in a garden. It was a mischievous deity and did not like to be annoyed by people).

In order to sound the god’s intentions both gentlemen stayed for the night in the fields. Kawahito made many rounds murmuring spells and thus encircled the place, where they were to sit. Deep at night the god came with great uproar, obviously in a very bad mood. He wanted to find the people but he could not, because they were invisible to him, thanks to the circle.

After the return to the capital, both gentlemen met in a temple, where Kawahito recited spells while Yasuhito performed the sammitsu (“three mysteries”: of the body, mouth and mind); with his hands he made mudra figures, with his mouth he invoked magic formulae, with his mind he venerated Buddha.

---

26 Konjaku monogatari 1975:XXIV,16.
28 The god of earth, or the god of the countryside.
Barring the way to evil spirits by closing the house played an important role in practices connected with *monoimi*, but that will be dealt with in the paragraph on avoiding evil spirits, because in the *monoimi* practices, the emphasis was put more on passive avoidance than on the active fight against demons.

### 1.1.6. Avoiding evil spirits

Many stories in the *Konjaku monogatari* end with the warning against entering unknown places, or places known to be haunted. They mention favourite hovels of demons, such as: desolated houses, old chapels, places of cremation, crossroads, mountains, and houses with a corpse inside.

The majority of such places were comparatively easy to avoid. If the necessity arose to go into the mountains or to stay in a house with a dead body, then the proper preventive measures had to be taken. The situation was more complicated when evil spirits entered one’s residence and caught its inhabitants unaware. There were, of course, *ommyōji* with their exoneration services, and other means of expelling the evil spirits. But sometimes all the measures appeared insufficient. People lost the battle and had to leave the battlefield. They moved from their house and went visiting somebody or, in the case of dignitaries with more than one mansion, changed one mansion for another. There were many instances of such escape from a haunted house. It was so with the ex-Empress Akiko during her illness in 987. Sumifurigami and Hayabusagami were bribed with ranks, but the ex-Empress, just in case, was transferred to another mansion designated by *ommyōji*. It was so with Kaneie, who insisted on living in his Nijō mansion although he knew it was haunted. His children begged him to leave the ill-famed house and go to a safer place, but he was obstinate. At last the *mononoke* got hold of him and he became very ill. Then he was forcibly moved to another of his residences.30

There was also a superstition enforced by *ommyōji* causing people to leave their houses and seek some other place. The superstition was based on a belief in regular, cyclic movements of celestial and earthly deities (among them, the already mentioned Tokujin) who changed their abodes according to the year, season or day. It was very dangerous to stay or to move in the direction of a temporary lodging of the deities. From this belief grew out many prohibitive ritual regulations, such as e.g. a “directional taboo” (*kataimi*) and ensuing from it the necessity of changing direction (*katatagae*). If one’s home was in a “bad direction” (*ashiki kata*, *kyōhō*) it became imperative to leave it and settle somewhere in “good direction” (*ehō*, *kippō*, *yoshiki kata*). The direction of a dangerous deity’s temporary lodgings was called *katafusagari* (forbidden or blocked up direction). If one had some

---

30 *Eiga monogatari* 1964:I,121.
important business in the *katatagae* direction, then it was necessary to go at first in some other direction and stay at least until midnight. The place of such temporary sojourn was called *katatagae* or *tabisho*. In most cases after midnight it was possible to proceed to the required place. But there were some occasions when it was necessary to leave home even for 45 days (*yonjūgo katatagae*) because some of the deities liked to stay in one place for one full season (a year being divided into eight seasons, of 45 days each). Besides, every seasonal change was especially dangerous on account of migratory customs of the deities according to the calendar. Hence, a special density of directional taboo in those periods (*setsubun tagae*, *sechibun no katatagae* – seasonal change of direction). All these troublesome rules were to prevent people from encroachment upon the grounds of capricious deities. The deities did not like to be disturbed, but it seems, too, that they demanded showing them reverence above anything else, and it was possible to obtain their favour by paying respect to them in advance, i.e., by performing a *katatagae* some time before a deity’s change of place.

The Heian literature has plentiful mentions and descriptions concerning the custom of *katatagae*. There is no single document without it, while in some diaries the number of *katatagae* days looks strikingly numerous, for instance, in the *Kagerō niki* there are 16 entries concerning it, and in the *Midō kampaku ki* more than 50 entries.

There were also “bad days” (*kyōjitsu*) designated by *ommyōji* when it was not necessary to leave home but, quite to the contrary, it was recommended to stay indoors and be very careful about one’s behaviour. For example, a day called *kuen-ichi* was bad for meeting people and it was much better on such a day to remain home and not receive visitors. There were 3 to 14 days of that kind in every month. Another *kyōjitsu* were called *kannichi*. They were established in the consecutive moons for the days governed by the signs of following animals (Japanese Zodiac); starting from dragon in the 1st moon, through ox, dog, sheep, hare, rat, bird, horse, tiger, boar, monkey up to snake in the 12th moon. On these days *ommyōji* recommended staying at home and abstaining from various activities.

It is evident that it was just impossible to obey all such recommendations. The *kannichi* days were the same for all people, and life would have stopped if people did not leave their houses so often.

But these are not all the days of restricted activity. There were other “bad days” and also “bad months/moons” (*kyōgetsu* or *yakugetsu* – “dangerous moon”), and “bad years” (*kyōnen* or *yakunen*, *yakudoshi* – “dangerous years”). Among bad days were *imibi* (days of abstinence), both public and private. These were connected with

---

31 Bernard Frank in his detailed study of *kataimi* and *katatagae* puts a special emphasis on the “*katatagae* preventives”. Frank, Bernard 1958. *Kata imi et katatagae: Etude sur les Interdits de direction a l’époque Heian*. Tōkyō.
anniversaries of death. In the case of national mourning they were called on imibi and ought to have been observed by the whole nation. In case of the anniversary of death in a family, only the members of the family had to abstain on that day from some forbidden activities. Besides, there were strict rules concerning such simple acts as washing one's hair or cutting one's nails. It was necessary each time to consult a calendar in order to find a proper day for performing the acts. The rules were even stricter for such important occasions as marriage, the first visit of a prospective lover, the ceremony of coming of age, a journey, etc. At the court all important ceremonies were fixed long in advance after prolonged consultations with ommyōji. The enthronement ceremony, installation of the Crown Prince, introduction of a new consort to the Emperor, the first night, pilgrimages, etc. – everything had to be consulted with the Ommyōryō.

Judging by his diary, Michinaga kept many masters of Ommyōdō busy during his active service at the palace. There are scores of entries concerning consultations with Kamo Kōei, Abe Seimei, Abe Yoshihira, Abe Yoshimasa and others, on public as well as private matters. Other diaries (the Shōyūki, Kagerō nikki, etc.) also show how important role ommyōji played in everyday life.

One of the most dangerous days was considered the day of kōshin, i.e. the day of the sexagenary cycle which was under the Zodiac sign of the elder brother of metal (kō) and of the monkey (shin). The kōshin day fell on every sixtieth day. People had to stay awake all night in order to protect themselves from “three worms” (sanshi) which might leave their bodies and do them harm if they slept. To keep awake people arranged various entertainments and poetic contests. Thanks to that custom, many compilations of “kōshin poetry” and “kōshin stories” have survived.

There was also once in every sixty years the kōshin year. People had to be then very cautious all year round and not to undertake any important decisions, like marriage or journey. Besides, there were dangerous years connected with one’s age. The most critical years were considered: 13, 25, 37, 49, 61, 85, and 99 years of age. In all those years it was recommended to be exceptionally cautious and to perform harae and order kitō to be recited.

When Empress Sadako was pregnant (in 1000) she felt very uneasy because she was then 25 years old, so it was her “dangerous year”. Her friends tried to console her by saying that the yakudoshi did not mean the danger of death. Nevertheless, everybody was troubled. Eventually, it turned out that their anxiety was well founded because Sadako died in childbirth.

Still other prohibitive rules ensued from beliefs in inauspicious dreams and omens. Whenever one had a bad dream or something unusual happened, or if one defiled oneself by contact with something ritually impure, then it was necessary to

---

perform abstinence called *monoimi* (abstaining from things). Bad dreams could have been warnings sent by deities and so, it was better to consult a dream-interpreter. Unusual happenings could have been signs of some *mononoke* (or other demons’) activity, and it was better to consult an *ommyōji*. The most frequently employed preventive measure in such cases was *monoimi*. During a *monoimi* it was essential to stay indoors closing all the entrances and shutting lattice windows. Even the main gate was closed on such days and there was prominently displayed a *monoimi no fuda* (taboo-tag) made of willow or peach-wood with the inscription *monoimi* on it. It was forbidden to read or even receive letters and no visitor was allowed on such days. The people closed together inside a house had to refrain from eating, writing and sexual intercourse. If the time dragged on, they could read the holy scriptures and meditate. It was also advisable to have an *ommyōji* to perform rites of exoneration. The periods of abstinence and its intensity depended on the initial reason, and were determined by the consulted specialist. If one had to break a *monoimi* and ventured outdoors one was obliged to wear a *monoimi no fuda* on a head-dress or on a sleeve.

It is quite evident from the literature of the period that not everybody treated all those prohibitions seriously. Quite often *katatagae* or *monoimi* became pretexts only for avoiding unwanted contacts. For example, Kaneie many a time excused himself from visits to lady Kagerō on the pretext of *kataimi* or *monoimi*, and she did not believe his excuses. Very illuminating are also ironic remarks of Sei Shōnagon about gentlemen with *monoimi no fuda* displayed on their head-dresses and carriages, gentlemen who made pilgrimages to a temple, and then chatted merrily, laughed without restraint and stared at ladies.

Michinaga, on the other hand, seemed to treat omens very seriously. Some of the incidents causing him distress may look amusing to us, but he treated them quite in earnest and each time he consulted his occult advisers.

The abhorrence of defilement (*sokue* or *shokue*) was the Shintoist contribution to prohibitive regulations otherwise monopolized by Ommyōdō. Any contact with death or blood was causing defilement. After death or birth in the family it was necessary to perform ablutions and rites of purification. Even objects belonging to a dead person had to be purified after the period of mourning. Pregnancy was also thought about in terms of impurity, and pregnant women had to leave the palace in the fourth month of pregnancy. In case of a sudden death or somebody being injured within the palace grounds, it was obligatory to perform rites of exoneration. Sometimes it disturbed greatly the normal functioning of the court, and it excluded many courtiers from participation in their official duties. As the sample of the complexity and consequences of the problem we shall quote from the *Midō kampaku ki* some entries, taken at random, but very pertinent. The first sample comes from the first half of the year 1004 and the second from the later part of the year 1015.
The year 1004

The 27th day of the 1st moon. A dog died.

The 1st day of the 2nd moon. Michinaga did not send customary offerings to the Ōharano shrine because of defilement. (There are other entries between the two dates but no evidence of any other reason for defilement, hence, it seems, Michinaga could not send the offerings on account of the dog).

The 9th day of the 2nd moon. The ceremony of rekken\textsuperscript{33} had to be postponed because one of the participants was in mourning, another one was defiled by a childbirth at home. (Here, again the defilement lasted several days at least, for the rekken ceremony was customarily performed on the 11th day of the 2nd moon, i.e., the ceremony was scheduled two days after the above entry).

The 15th day of the 5th moon. The palace defiled by a child-birth.

The 18th day of the 6th moon. The day before a nurse of Michinaga’s son had died in confinement. Michinaga summoned Kamo Kōei and Abe Seimei for consultation. They agreed that he must postpone his visit to the Kamo shrine. The visit was previously scheduled for the 20th day.

The 20th day of the 6th moon. Abe Seimei persuaded Michinaga not to worship a Buddhist image while in the state of defilement.

The 21st day of the 6th moon. At night Michinaga performed purification rites (harae, gejo).

The year 1015

The 27th day of the 7th moon. There was found in the palace grounds the severed head of a man (in Michinaga’s diary the gruesome finding is located on the artificial mountain in the garden; in the Shōyūki it is under the bridge of the Shishinden pavilion). On account of that the palace became defiled. Michinaga was curious to see the head but refrained from it in fear or defiling himself\textsuperscript{34}.

The 28th day of the 7th moon. Because of defilement the sending of imperial envoy to the Ise shrine had to be postponed.

The 2nd day of the 8th moon. In the palace of the Empress Dowager there was found the head, one hand and one leg of a baby. It caused the state of defilement for 50 days. Again sending of the imperial envoy to Ise had to be postponed.

\textsuperscript{33} The rekken ceremony, held every year, was a review of documents pertaining to officials of the Ministries of Ceremonies and of Military Affairs.

\textsuperscript{34} According to the Shōyūki, the period of defilement was fixed for 7 days.
There are altogether more than 100 entries in the diary concerning defilement (of Michinaga personally, of other persons and within the palace). In majority of cases as the reason for it is death or confinement (of people or of dogs). Michinaga himself was in the habit of putting up a tag warning other people not to come near him, as it was considered possible “to catch” defilement like a flu or some other contagious disease. Other people put up similar tags as well. The function of the tags was limited to a warning only, while monoimi no fuda had an additional magic function of warding off evil (the material used points to that function, they were made of peach or willow-wood – materials repulsive to demons).

Quite a different category of methods aimed at avoiding evil included various word taboos. It was believed that some words were endowed with a supernatural power because of their meaning or because of associations they evoked. According to Kotański\(^\text{35}\), the names of deities in the period of compiling Kojiki and Nihongi were so awe-inspiring that they were not used in writing, and all the names are descriptive only, while the true proper names have remained secret and not revealed. This thesis finds its corroboration in later times. In the Kuge bunin (the chronicle of ranks and offices at the highest level of hierarchy) the second part of Sugawara Michizane’s name has been erased. All entries concerning him between 893 and 901 read: Kan Michi. Writing only the first part of family name and pronouncing it according to the Sino-Japanese pronunciation was customary, but writing only the first part of personal name was extraordinary, and it was practiced in case of awe-inspiring names. Similar method was used by people who copied some scriptures (diaries, sutras, etc.) signed with their father’s name. The father’s name was also abbreviated to its first component\(^\text{36}\).

The choice of the name for an imperial prince was a matter for grave consideration, and the name was decided upon after consultations with the Ommyōryō\(^\text{37}\). The same procedure had to be followed in case of changing the name of an era (nengo). We mention it here, although it properly belongs to evocative magic, because the opposite was also important; by the opposite is meant giving auspicious names to children or to a year in order to invite good luck. There was also a belief that if an evil spirit possessing a person revealed its name to the yorimashi, then the spirit had to lose its power and was easily expelled\(^\text{38}\).


\(^{36}\) For example, one of the copies of the Midō kampaku ki was signed “Michi-“; and because of that the copy has been believed to had been written by Michinaga’s son.

\(^{37}\) In the present day Japan there still persists a strong belief in the supernatural power of personal names. It often happens that people change their names after a grave illness or some misfortune. There are diviners who make their living by advising people what names are the most proper for them or their children, and there are books published for the same purpose.

\(^{38}\) Ikeda 1974:124. In China the same belief was strongly pronounced: “...the Chinese of ancient times were dominated by the notion that beings are intimately associated with their names, so that
The high priestess of Ise had to abstain from words connected with Buddhism, and of words associated with ritual impurity. In holy precincts of her temporary court (No no miya) and, of course, in Ise jingu many words were forbidden (imikotoba) and other words were used instead. For example the Buddha was called “the child of the centre” (nakago), sutras were called “coloured paper” (somegami), Buddhist monks and nuns, who were shaven, were called “long-haired” (kaminaga); instead of shinu – to die, the word naoru – recover, was used; instead of chi – blood, the word ase – sweat, was used, for yami – illness, the word yasumi – rest was substituted, and many similar changes were made. These and other imikotoba were established by the Engishiki regulations in the chapter on the bureau of saigū.

It was considered inauspicious to use during the connubial ceremonies such words as saru (go away) or kaeru (to return). Any other occasions which marked “beginning” also called for special prudence in one’s choice of words and actions.

On the day of Emperor Ichijō’s enthronement ceremony people working in the Daigokuden pavilion found a severed hairy head on the Emperor’s seat. They reported the matter to Kaneie who was then the highest dignitary of the government. Kaneie pretended not to hear the report. They repeated the news more loudly and Kaneie still pretended to be deaf. After the third attempt at getting Kaneie’s response they understood at last, that he did not wish to hear anything so inauspicious on such a happy occasion.

Various prohibitive rules observed on the New Year’s Day, or other occasions marking “beginning” (like e.g. enthronement, marriage, etc.) belong to the preventive magic. Parallel to them there were also observed various rules which intended to provoke good luck in the coming year (or during the new reign, or in marriage, etc.). These belong to the evocative magic. There were also performed some rites of mixed purposes, intended to ward off evil and to bring luck at the same time. These, too, we shall classify as evocative magic.

1.2. Evocative practices

Evocative practices were concerned mostly with ensuring health, longevity, prosperity, and other good things in everyday life. Many practices of this kind were connected with seasonal changes of the year, and at the court were observed as annual ceremonies (nenjū gyōji).

a man’s knowledge of the name of a spectre might enable him to exert power over the latter and bend it to his will” (de Groot 1910:1126).

The first day of the New Year (chōga) was especially important from the magical point of view, because the day marked “beginning”. It was necessary to pay attention to one’s smallest deeds as they could influence the course of events during the coming year. At the court the Emperor received congratulatory visits from the highest officials after he performed the ceremony of shihōhai (homage of four directions). Early in the morning (at the hour of the tiger, i.e., between 4 and 6 a.m.) the Emperor went out to the eastern garden of the Seiryōden pavilion and there he prayed turning into four directions towards imperial mausolea and he paid homage to the lodestar of the year. It became one of the annual events in 889. In the ceremony there are evident some elements of Shintoist rituals (homage to the imperial mausolea) and some of Ommyōdō (homage to the star). On that day a special sake (toso) was prepared, tested and offered by specially chosen virgins to the Emperor to ensure his health and longevity.

The period after the New Year was especially busy with various luck-bringing practices. On the 3rd day of the 1st moon there was a ceremony called “tooth-hardening” (hagatame) which was believed to promote health and long life. On that day special dishes were served (e.g., heavy rice cakes, melons, giant radishes, ayu fish and others) which were thought to be nutritious and good for “hardening” one’s teeth. Partaking of the dishes was not for dietetic purpose but for magic ones, because the Chinese character for “tooth” was the same as for “age” (Chinese: ch'i) and in magic thinking the transfer of desired properties was possible from one thing to another if even a formal association existed between them (in this case the properties of hard strong teeth were to be transferred to such an abstract idea as age.

On the 1st day of the rat imperial cooks prepared a kind of soup made of seven young herbs (nanakusa, wakana). This was ceremonially presented to the Emperor in order to ensure his good health for the year. The young herbs full of vital juices, were to give their vitality to persons partaking of them. The ceremony was called wakana no sekku (the festival of young herbs). It was customary on that day to decorate the palace and private mansions with various ornaments made of the seven herbs. Besides, during the whole day there were excursions to the fields (mainly to Murasakino).

Another ceremony of the 1st moon was performed on the 7th day. It was called aouma no sechie (festival of blue horses). For the first time the ceremony was introduced by Emperor Shōmu and patterned after a similar Chinese ceremony. Up to

---

41 This is similar in principle to the previously mentioned serving of toso to the Emperor. Morris points out that testing the toso by virgins was “...to promote the Emperor’s longevity by transferring the long life expectancy of the girls by means of the wine”, ibid., 130, com.729. The wakana ceremony and many others were based on the same principle of sympathetic magic.
42 Reigned 724–749.
the reign of Kônin (770–781) it was held sporadically, later on it became annual. At first the horses used for the ceremony were grey but since Daigô tennô's times white horses came to be used, but the old name “festival of blue horses” was not changed (although the character for “blue” was supplanted by the character for “white”, the pronunciation remained still the same, *aouma no sechie*). The ceremony was based on the conviction that looking at white horses insured good health during the coming year. The festivities took place in front of the Burakuin or Shishinden pavilions. There were 21 horses parading in three columns. After the parade the Emperor held a banquet.

From the 8th day in the palace the Buddhist ceremony called *gosaie* (assembly of exoneration) was performed for seven consecutive days. It consisted of reading and expounding sutras intended as means of securing peace in the country. It was performed at the beginning of a year because there existed a strong belief in the magic power of the sutras and their reading in the 1st moon assured peace for the whole year. *Gosaie* was celebrated for the first time in the 10th moon of 729. It was held sporadically afterwards until 802 when it was established as an annual event of the 1st moon.

On the 15th day of the 1st moon it was customary to prepare gruel called *mochigayu* (full moon gruel), which was made of seven grains (rice beans, sesame seeds, chestnuts, millet, etc.). The intended offsets of eating *mochigayu* were the same as of eating the “seven herbs soup”. *Mochigayu* was believed to contain some magic creative powers as well. It may be surmised from the custom of hitting women with sticks used for stirring the gruel, as it was believed that the hit women would give birth to boys.

The 2nd moon was filled mostly with many events of purely Shintoist character. It was probably connected with the old traditions related to the beginning of agricultural cycle. Among others, there was on the 4th day a ceremony called *kinensai* (*toshigoī no matsuri*). It was initiated by officials of the Jingikan43 and celebrated in all the shrines of the country. It consisted of prayers for good crop and peace in the country. The prayers were accompanied by magic rites inducing earth to fertility.

On the 3rd day of the 3rd moon a ceremony of *gokusui* was performed as a part of the festival called *momo no sekku* (*jomi, joshi no sekku*). The *gokusui* (*kyokusui, gokusui no en* – feast of winding water) had been intended primarily for prolonging life and promoting prosperity by purifying the body from evils. During the festivities cups with sake were floated down a stream or river, which symbolised floating away impurities and bad luck. There was a custom of picking up a passing cup from the water, drinking the contents and reciting a poem. The original magic intention had been lost under the cover of aesthetic forms of elegant entertainment.

---

43 The office managing all matters connected with Shinto and supervising many court ceremonies.
The ceremony (established during the reign of Mommu\textsuperscript{44}) was practiced formerly at the court only. Later on the custom spread to the courtiers and officials and started to be observed at private mansions in more and more elaborate forms, without any religious connotations.

The 4th moon was full of activities in many shrines connected with the imperial family or the court. Among the festivals the most important and magnificent was Aoi matsuri at the Kamo shrines, as the deities of Kamo were considered to be guardian gods of Heian kyō. There were also seats important Buddhist events, and among them the most celebrated one was on the 8th day – the day of Buddha's birth anniversary.

A very colourful festival was observed on the 5th day of the 5th moon. It was called ayame no sekku (or shōbu no koshi) – the iris festival. On that day the palace and private residences were gorgeously decorated with irises. The Emperor wore a special head-dress made of the flowers, ladies wore the flowers in their hair and they also put on costumes made of materials resembling irises in colour or design. On that day, the Emperor distributed sake in which iris petals had been seeped. Iris petals were also put into bath-water, between clothes, and under pillows. Besides, there were prepared balls of medicine (kusudama) made of various herbs and decorated with irises. The balls were put into silk bags and hung in the houses in many places. They were believed to expel illness and prolong life.

The belief had already been well established in the Heian period. Sometimes the festival was suspended if there was a pestilence or, according to Ommyōryō, the day or moon was inauspicious. But if no ominous omen interfered, the day of ayame was full of colour, fragrance and joy. They held riding and archery contests, watched by the Emperor and the court. The festivities lasted three days and the 5th day of the 5th moon was the last one. At night the festival was closed with the kannari no jin scaring away all possible demons.

In the 6th moon there were various religious activities fully occupying the court: on the 1st day – the preparation of “pure fire” (imibi) for gods. It was kindled by rubbing sticks together. The “pure fire” was used for making “pure meal” (imibi gohan) as an offering for gods (a similar ceremony was performed on the 1st days of the 11th and 12th moons). On the 14th and 15th days the goryōe in the Yasaka jinja was celebrated. After that there were made preparations for the ceremony of great purification, and other concomitant ceremonies.

On the 7th day of the 7th moon the tanabata festival was observed. It was held in honour of a heavenly weaver and heavenly herdsman represented by two stars (Vega and Altair). According to the Chinese legend the weaver – a beautiful girl and the herdsman – a handsome young man, loved each other, and were so absorbed in their emotions that they neglected their work. As a punishment they were sent

\textsuperscript{44} Reigned 697–707. The ceremony was brought to Japan from China, where it had been performed as a lustration festival during the Han dynasty (206 B.C.–220).
to heaven as two stars which could meet only once a year – on the 7th day of the 7th moon. In memory of the romantic lovers a festival was established in the Nara period. On that day offerings were made for the stars, and poems composed for them, while young girls prayed to the weaver for skill in weaving.

The 8th moon was not rich in court events. Perhaps it was simply too hot for extraordinary activities. There were only some ceremonies in honour of Confucius, and some Buddhist masses. After the ceremony of reading and expounding (sekiten or shakuten) Confucian scriptures by doctors of literature, the Emperor was presented with dishes called sōmei (offerings of wisdom) which were intended to symbolize and to promote sagacity.

On the 9th day of the 9th moon there was a festival of chrysanthemums (kiku no sekku) with a big feast given by the Emperor in the Shishinden pavilion. Chrysanthemums were believed, like irises, to have the power of expelling diseases and prolonging life. The festivities of the day were similar to those of the ayame no sekku. There were decorations everywhere made of chrysanthemums. The kusudama with irises were taken down and replaced by similar kusudama with chrysanthemums. On the eve of kiku no sekku the flowers in the gardens were covered with pieces of silk and on the day of the festival ladies rubbed their bodies with the silk, and used it for polishing their tables and shelves.

In the 10th moon the most important event fell on the 2nd day of the boar. The Emperor was then presented with the “long life mochi” (inoko mochi – mochi of the boar), made of seven kinds of flour. Similar mochi were distributed among the ladies in waiting, courtiers and officials. The mochi were to ensure long life without any illness. Besides, it was expected that people partaking of inoko mochi would have as many children as boars did.

The 11th moon was one of the most active seasons according to the court calendar. On the 1st day of the hare there was the ainame no matsuri (ainie, ainube no matsuri) – “the festival of facing harvest”. In the palace and in all the shrines there were prayers and offerings for good harvest.

On the 2nd day of the hare fell the beginning of the most important Shintoist ceremony called niiname no matsuri. It was the grand ceremony of thanksgiving. On the first day the gods were given offerings of the year’s first rice. The second day was devoted to thanksgiving for the cattle. A feast was given by the Emperor and the gosechi dances were performed. The dances were preceded by weeks of excitement and preparations. Their traditions went back to Temmu tennō’s days. On the day preceding the gosechi dances there was celebrated matsuri – the festival for soul pacifying. The purpose of the ceremony was to pacify the souls of the Emperor, the Empress and the crown Prince, to pacify and “bind” them inside the bodies, preventing the souls to wander outside.

Besides there were many other Shintoist and Buddhist ceremonies all through the 11th moon. The last month was also fairly busy, as it was necessary to end the
year in ritual purity and in harmony with all the gods and Buddhas. The most important festival fell on the last day. It was the *tsuina* (described in the paragraph on “expelling evil”) and its accompanying rites.

All the annual court ceremonies are fully documented in the Heian literature, in diaries as well as in novels. As it may be seen from the above given short description, many festivals had strong religious flavour, but we chose only those Shintoist ones which had developed from primitive magic practices connected with the agricultural cycle (*ainame no matsuri, toshigoi no matsuri*, etc.). There were many other festivals which have been omitted in our description. Not all the described practices can be classified as clearly evocative ones, as in many of them there are evident elements of preventive magic (expelling or purifying evil), while in others, the elements of religious reverence and supplication are predominant.

Reading scriptures over a newly born male child may be safely included in evocative practices. The texts chosen for the purpose were of educational character – the treatise on filial piety or excerpts from Chinese chronicles. But it is hard to suppose that anybody expected the infant to understand the texts. They were intended as magic formulae which were to stimulate inclination for learning in the child.

Another kind of evocative magic may be seen in the custom of changing the era names. This custom is related to the belief in the magic power of words. The names of eras were changed on account of some misfortunes (e.g., protracted illness of the Emperor) or calamities (e.g., pestilence). It was believed necessary to change the name for a more auspicious one. The change was also decided upon in case of good or bad portents. For example, in 848 Emperor Nimmyō⁴⁵ was informed that in the Bungo province a white turtle was found. The matter was discussed among learned officials of the Ommyōryō, and they decided that the finding was an excellent portent. The Emperor gave a big banquet in celebration of the event and the era name was changed to *kajō* (“good omen”).

Heian literature has such an aristocratic character that it deals almost exclusively with life at the highest level of society. That is why there are so many descriptions of court events, but so very few of popular practices in the countryside, or among labourers and artisans. We may only surmise that there existed various evocative practices. They had to exist because up to this day there are many magic acts of very primitive sort performed in every region of Japan. But in Heian literature there is no evidence of them. The reasons may be twofold: 1. some magic practices are possibly described but we cannot recognize them as such, because the intention behind them is not revealed. We can only guess and draw our conclusions based on later practices, or on practices (contemporary or later) in other countries, which is, to say the least, imprudent; 2. it seems that in the capital the older magic practices were superseded by the more sophisticated Buddhist practices of the *kaji kito* kind.

---

⁴⁵ Reigned 853–850.
There existed not only preventive *kaji* and *kitō* exorcisms but also evocative ones like, for example, *migatame* ("body hardening" incantations of *kaji* *kitō*) and *gengata* exercised by the holy man who cured Hikaru Genji of ague.

In the *Eiga monogatari* there is a longish fragment describing peasants planting rice\(^{46}\). The planting was arranged for the amusement of aristocratic ladies and gentlemen, but according to strict instructions it was to be performed exactly like any other planting. There was an old man under an umbrella supervising the works. Ten men played on various musical instruments while fifty or sixty young women worked in the field. The peasants sang songs inviting plentiful crops. There were also performed dances called *dengaku* (music of the fields). The description in the *Eiga monogatari* is not very precise, but nevertheless it shows a ceremony accompanying the actual work. The ceremony, we may guess, was intended as stimulating the earth to bear plentiful crops.

Up to this day, all over Japan, there are performed ceremonies called *taasobi* (field games) in which the whole process of rice cultivation is carried out in pantomime. *Taasobi* are performed at the time of the full moon after the New Year. In summer another ceremony, called *taue* (rice transplantation) is celebrated when rice is planted on sacred paddies. Both ceremonies are accompanied by dances and drum beating. They are believed to stimulate the earth to fertility.

### 1.3. Destructive magic

The Heian literature does not provide too many instances of using destructive magic, although there existed a belief in possibly harming or destroying people by means of occult art. The belief is evident through various scattered remarks in novels and chronicles. It seems that the most popular method of cursing an enemy was simply by pronouncing a spell (*suso*, *shuso* or *zuso*, *jubaku*, *noroi*, *majinai*). Sometimes specialists were engaged for the purpose, but quite often it was not necessary (by “specialists” we mean here *ommyōji*, itinerant monks, and other sorcerers). It was believed that an intense bad will against a person could produce the desired effects if expressed in the proper form. There were also more complicated methods of cursing, methods demanding some elaborate preparations like making images of paper or wood and other *majimono* (magic contrivances). It is not quite clear what form such a *majimono* could have. For example, In the *Mizukagami*\(^{47}\) there is a story of Empress Inoue employing black art in order to kill her husband,\(^{47}\)

---

\(^{46}\) *Eiga monogatari* 1964:II,110–12.

\(^{47}\) One of the historical tales (*rekishi monogatari*). It deals with the period from the time of Jimmu to that of Nimmyō (660 B.C. - 850 A.D.).
Emperor Kōnin\textsuperscript{48}. The evidence of her majiwaza (witchcraft) was found in a well. But it is not said what the evidence consisted of. It could have been a doll. During the excavations in the old palace grounds in Nara there was found a wooden doll with nails driven into the eyes and abdomen, which means that dolls were used for magic purposes. They were called hitokata.

It is very well known that images of persons to be killed (or otherwise harmed) were used in magic of many ethnic groups widely separated from one another in time and in space. Such magic images are perhaps one of the most commonly met features all round the world. Japan was not an exception. In the Nihongi there is a mention of preparing images for magic purposes (the second year of Emperor Yōmei’s reign\textsuperscript{49}).

In the Midō kampaku ki under the date of 1012, the 10th day of the 4th moon, Michinaga wrote down that in one of his mansions (Higashi sanjō dono) a majimono was found in the well. He did not explain what it was, but his cousin Sanesuke was more explicit. In the Shōyūki it is stated that the majimono consisted of mochi with human hairs kneaded into the cake. Michinaga consulted Abe Yoshihira who decided that somebody had wished to get rid of Michinaga. The next day there were rites of exoneration performed in the Higashi sanjō mansion.

It is impossible to know exactly whose hairs were kneaded into the sinister mochi, but based on many analogies in other countries we may venture a guess that the hairs were Michinaga’s own. It is again very well-known from other cultural circles that in sympathetic magic hairs, nails or sweat of the intended victim were popularly used in magic attempts at killing or harming. In the story there is another mildly intriguing element, namely the well. It is here the third instance of putting a majimono into a well. It is hard to tell if wells were used because they were considered good as hiding places, or if there was some deeper meaning in the choice. Perhaps it was believed that drinking water which was “poisoned” by the majimono strengthened its deadly power? Or perhaps the majimono were put into the well just at the time when the nomadic Tokujin was believed to stay there, and such an intrusion upon his grounds was sure to awake his wrath?

Michinaga was probably a record-holder of a very peculiar kind. He was cursed in his life at least five times, and possibly even more. But, on the other hand, perhaps too little is known about other persons. In the case of Michinaga there are many written documents describing his life and personality. He was watched by other people because his official career was very swift and still as a young man he reached prosperity unsurpassed by anybody else. Hate and unhealthy rivalry marked his career from the very beginning. At first he competed with his brothers, Michitaka and Michikane, but from them, their early born animosity spread to their children

\textsuperscript{48} Reigned 770–781.
\textsuperscript{49} According to the traditional chronology, Yōmei reigned 585–587.
and grandchildren. Michinaga's most bitter enemies came from these two branches of his own family and persons related to them by marriage. But besides, he had many other enemies, a lot more than friends. There were people wronged or insulted or even ruined by him. They could not gain any victory over him because he was too powerful politically and economically, and thus some of them tried at least to destroy him by magic. In 995 Takashina Naritada cast a curse on Michinaga because the latter was appointed to the most coveted office of nairan instead of Korechika, Naritada's grandson. Korechika was the strongest of Michinaga's rivals and in due time he was taken off the political scene and banished to Tsukushi. In the sentence it was said that Korechika cast a curse on the ex-Empress Higashi sanjō in (she was seriously ill in the period preceding the verdict). The ex-Empress was Michinaga's sister and Emperor Ichijō's mother.

The feud between Michinaga's and Korechika's factions did not stop at that. In 1009 it was revealed that Korechika and his relatives had put a curse on Michinaga, his daughter Akiko (consort of Ichijō) and Akiko's son, Prince Atsuhira (Gonki, 50th day of the 1st moon). Although this time nothing bad happened to the intended victims, the perpetrators of magic acts were finished in the public opinion. Afterwards Michinaga had no more trouble from them, but soon he was engaged in other competitions and he was cursed again. The mochi with hairs we may safely assume as an attempt at harming him by magic. There was a further sequence to that. Being ill two months later he went to Kamo Kōei for consultation. Just as he was going to enter Kōei's residence, a dead rat fell under his feet. And then, the next day he went to the Hosshōji temple and at the entrance to the fane, a snake fell in front of him (Shōyūki). Michinaga was frightened and he became more ill than before. He was as superstitious as everybody else during the period, but he was not blind. He had to see that there was hatred in the air, that it was a human hand which put mochi into the wells he could not believe in dead rats and snakes falling like rain from high heaven. Dead bodies were considered impure in the ritual sense, but also they were frightening in themselves, by simple association with death. Throwing a dead animal at somebody was probably equal to inviting death itself.

At any rate, there had to be found at least a scapegoat because the situation was becoming quite dangerous to Michinaga's prestige, if not to him personally. And the scapegoat was found in the person of Fujiwara Tametō who was connected with the faction of Empress Shūshi, consort of Sanjō tennō, and a rival of Michinaga's daughter Yōshiko (Kenshi).

Another rivalry of Michinaga's daughter was already mentioned in the paragraph on vengeful spirits. Here we would like to mention briefly that in 1017

---

50 Moszyński gives cases of people who, becoming aware that somebody had cast a curse on them, reacted violently, falling ill or even dying. Moszyński 1934:347.
51 Shōyūki, 1012, the 17th day of the 6th moon.
Akimitsu cursed Michinaga because the latter’s daughter won the competition with Akimitsu’s daughter over the favours of Kōichijō in\(^{52}\).

The rivalry among the ladies of the court for imperial favour was a frequent topic of conversation, and from time to time it took a more sinister turn. It was thus with Noriko (Tōshi). She was a sister of Yasuko (Anshi), a consort of Emperor Murakami. After Yasuko’s death the Emperor became enamoured with Noriko and invited her to the palace. He had at the time many other concubines and they were not kind to the newcomer. Bad tongues began wagging and Noriko soon found herself isolated from the palace life. She was even suspected of killing her sister by magic\(^{53}\). It should be added that Yasuko had died in child-birth, which was not such a rare occurrence in the Heian period. At first the death was ascribed to the activity of Motokata’s and Motoko’s vengeful spirits, but later on it was whispered that perhaps a living person – Noriko – had been instrumental in causing Yasuko’s death.

Among the above described cases only Tametō was known (or rather suspected) of using an ommyōji for casting a curse on Michinaga. Other persons possibly used a specialist but it is not clearly told, and we may suppose that it was sufficient to express one’s grudge against somebody else to be suspected of the active wish, to curse. There is in the Ōkagami a story of enmity between Fujiwara Koretada and his cousin Fujiwara Asanari. A misunderstanding between both gentlemen resulted in a hostility spreading to next generations. Asanari, frustrated in his ambitions, cursed Koretada’s family in the following words: “This family will stand for a long time, but whether there were sons or daughters they would not prosper. If there are people who will think it merciless (on my part) I shall hold a grudge against them, too” (Kono zō nagaku tatami. Moshi danshi mo joshi mo ari tomo hakabakashikute wa araseji. Aware to iu hito mo araba, sore wo mo uramin\(^{54}\)). These words were considered a curse sufficiently powerful to strike terror into the hearts of Koretada’s descendants. But it should be noted that even after his death Asanari was very active as a shiryō, too.

Lady Kagerō was tormented with jealousy when Kaneie frequented the house of a woman known as “the lady in the alley” (machi no kōji no onna). She wished every misfortune to the rival, and when she heard that the other woman had born a child and the child had died, she felt satisfied. She believed that the wishes had been realized\(^{55}\).

Sei Shōnagon describes quite a different situation. She writes understandingly about a bitter disappointment felt by a family who cursed the unfaithful husband of a daughter and the husband looked immune to curses and prospered in the world\(^{56}\).

\(^{52}\) Ibid., 1017, the 19th day of the 11th moon.
\(^{53}\) Eiga monogatari 1964:1,47.
\(^{54}\) Ōkagami 1967:142.
\(^{56}\) Makura no sōshi 1958:275.
The last three cases (Asanari, lady Kagerō, and the disappointed family) at first sight do not even look like “cursing” in the magic sense. They seem to be “cursing” in the popular meaning of the word. It is only the intention behind the words or thoughts that turns a common expression of ill will into a magic act. People believed nevertheless in the magic power of such intentions. Any mysterious misfortune or death could be easily explained as the result of a curse. In order to ensure safety from unperceived curses people performed the rites of zuso no harae, and in the case of a discovered curse they asked specialists for the rites of exoneration (harae, gejo).

Probably lady Noriko was not on good terms with her sister Yasuko, and that fact alone was enough to raise suspicions towards Yasuko’s death being caused by Noriko’s active ill will. There was no actual evidence of magic discovered, but the lady’s reputation has been blackened forever. In the Reiiki there is also a different story about a false accusation.

In the Engōji temple there was a monk called Eshō. He stole some firewood and soon afterwards he died. At the time there was kept in the temple a cow which gave birth to a calf. When the calf became strong enough it was used for carrying wood. One day there came an unknown monk and said, looking at the calf: “Monk Eshō recited sutras so diligently and now he must draw a cart with wood”. On hearing that the calf wept bitterly and died. Then the mysterious monk was accused of “killing it with a curse” (ushi o noroite koroseri). He was arrested and put before an officer. But the officer soon understood that the accused monk was nobody else but Kannon bosatsu.57

Another story from the Reiiki shows the belief in “binding people with a spell”. Once an itinerant monk came to a man begging for alms. The man not only refused but also chased the monk away. The monk took flight to the fields and was followed so closely by the bad man that he lost the hope of making good his escape. In desperation he uttered a spell (jubaku). At once the man began to behave crazily. He went here and there, turned round and round, but could not leave the field. The monk disappeared. The children of the spellbound man came but no matter how and what they tried, they were not able to take their father home. They went to another monk and asked his help. At first he refused, but the children were so earnest that at last he consented. Reciting a sutra he liberated the man from the magic spell (gedachi suru koto etari).58

All the above described examples concerned individual problems and the magic acts were performed individually. But there was also magic employed in the case of a national emergency. “At the beginning of the year 940 elaborate services and prayers for divine help had been ordered by the Court in the principal religious establish-

57 Nihon reiki 1975:1,20; Konjaku monogatari 1975:XX,20. The Konjaku monogatari version is essentially the same, but the name or Engoji monk is given as Erai.
ments, while throughout the country rituals of commutation were performed by adepts of the mystic cult in the hope of destroying Masakado by magic acts\textsuperscript{59}.

Taira Masakado was a rebel and for a very long time a very successful one. Acting in the eastern provinces of Japan he proclaimed himself the Emperor and began to appoint new provincial officials. His life and deeds are described in a chronicle called \textit{Masakado ki} (or \textit{Shōmonki}\textsuperscript{60}). Sansom’s description is based on the chronicle; also Masakado’s story in the \textit{Konjaku monogatari} was derived from the same source. It is said there that prayers were ordered in all temples and shrines. The results were as desired; when Masakado was to fight in a decisive battle he was spell-bound and could not move his hands. His horse was also spell-bound and could not run and Masakado was killed. Some time after his death he appeared in somebody’s dream and talked about his sufferings for his sins\textsuperscript{61}.

2. Magic: instruments

The preceding chapters mentioned in various contexts many objects used as instruments for magical purposes. Here we would like to group them, adding some supplementary remarks. The objects may be divided into six groups: 1) liturgical objects; 2) military equipment; 3) plants; 4) specifically magical objects; 5) parts of human body; 6) words.

2.1. Liturgical objects

The first group covers utensils commonly used by priests for various religious rites in Shintoist shrines and in Buddhist temples. Some of the utensils could be used for magical purposes by persons of the laity, as well. For instance, in the description of treating a sick child there was a woman who made \textit{gohei} and waved them over the patient. The woman was a traditional Shintoist shaman and \textit{gohei} are typical Shintoist accessories. In another case we saw a Buddhist monk giving his patient a \textit{toko} as a talisman.

\textit{Toko} was a typical accessory of Buddhist monks. It was a wooden stick 7–8 shaku long, with metal spearheads at both ends. In ancient India it had been used as a kind of weapon, but it came to be used by Buddhist clergy as a magic weapon against carnal desires and all other evil passions, and also as a symbol of holy orders. Exorcists brandished \textit{toko} while reciting their spells. Another accessory indispen-

\textsuperscript{59} Sansom 1958:I,246.

\textsuperscript{60} Written probably soon after the rebellion. The author is unknown.

\textsuperscript{61} \textit{Konjaku monogatari} 1975:XXV,1.
sable for exorcists’ practices was zuzu – a rosary. Rosaries were made of wooden beads which number customarily was one hundred eight – the number of carnal desires according to the Buddhist teaching. Besides, in more elaborate rites of exor-
eration there were used mandara – sacred Buddhist pictures symbolizing the uni-
verse. They were especially popular among the followers of the Shingon sect.

It should be noted that the liturgical objects used for magic purposes were
necessary as accessorial instruments, accompanying invocations and spells. That,
at least, some of them could be used as instruments sensu stricto, shows the toko
given to Genji as a talisman.

2.2. Military equipment

The second group of magic instruments includes different military equipment
like swords and knives, bows and arrows, spears and halberds, and also drums.
Their use is very well documented. They served for scaring away all kinds of demons
by a display of military prowess or by making awesome noise.

2.3. Plants

In the third group we find various plants. Some of them were used for clearly
apotropaic purposes. Such was the case with rice and other grains, with the willow
end peach trees (or wood\textsuperscript{62}) and with flowers and herbs used for preparing kusudama
or for preparing dishes meant as remedies or panacea. Their meaning was explained
in some detail in the preceding chapters. Besides, there were probably some plants
used for magic purposes but from the examined documents of the epoch, their role
is not quite clear. For instance, some passages in the Nihongi (Keikō den) give evi-
dence to the fact that garlic was used for apotropaic purposes. One may suppose
(though it is pure guesswork) that the belief in this property of garlic did not disap-
pear up to the Heian period. In the Genji monogatari there is a story about a lady
who could not receive her lover and talked with him from behind a screen because

\textsuperscript{62} De Groot explains the devil-expelling power ascribed to the willow by the graphic form
of the word yang and liu (both mean “willow”) “... which point to its (willow) relation with the
universal light and the spring”, (de Groot 1910:999). It seems a rather far-fetched idea as the belief
in the magic power of willow originated probably among the illiterate people, therefore the graphic
form of the word is irrelevant. But the relation with the spring could have been an important fac-
tor in the belief. It might have been so with the peach, too. In Japan the peach has been a symbol
of fertility. Up to this day there are festivals of fertility with representations of the peach displayed
as a symbol of the female sex organ.
she had eaten a lot of garlic. Garlic was considered to be a strong remedy for a cold and fever. The same properties are ascribed to another plant, arrowroot. A common feature of both plants is their aggressive, unpleasant smell. Several instances of eating arrowroot as an antidote against fever may be found in diaries of the period (the Shōyūki, Midō). It seems not improbable that garlic and arrowroot found their way to quackery (meant at the time as medicine) as direct transpositions of the older forms of magic. Using bad-smelling things for scaring off demons is known from other cultures as well (e.g. *asa foetida* bags).

There are some faint traces of a belief in magic properties of bamboo. One may suppose that the use of bamboo sticks for the ceremony of *yoori* was not fortuitous. There had to be some reason for choosing this inconvenient method of measuring the Emperor. Perhaps it was a kind of translative magic (up to this day bamboo is considered a symbol of physical strength). The properties of bamboo, its strength and durability were to be transmitted to the measured person.

Another example of an unexplained application of bamboo may be seen in the custom of cutting the umbilical cord of a baby with a bamboo knife. In such a case the same magic principle could be involved: transmitting to the child all the properties of fast growing, and acquiring strength like a bamboo shoot.

### 2.4. Specifically magic objects

In the fourth group of magic instruments there were various objects made exclusively for magic purposes such as *uzue* and *uzuchi, kusudama*, all kinds of amulets (*gofu*), *monoini no fuda*, the artificial tiger’s head for the ceremony of the first bath, pictures depicting Shōki for warding off devils and also figures of *shishi* and *komainu* guarding imperial chambers from demons. These figures, made after the Korean fashion, represented animals which were believed to ward off evils. They had the shapes of two dogs, although one of them was called a “lion” (*shishi*) and another one was called a “Korean dog” (*komainu*). The lion was yellow and had its mouth open, while the dog was white and its mouth was closed.

All these objects were meant as instruments warding off demons, illness and other evil influences. For more variegated purposes paper and wooden dolls were made which were called *hitokata, katashiro, agamono, nademono* and *amagatsu*. They could be used as amulets (*hitokata, katashiro, amagatsu*), but they also could be used as instruments for casting a curse on somebody (*hitokata, katashiro*). Besides, the dolls of *agamono* and *nademono* kinds served as instruments of purification, while some *hitokata* served as substitutes of a woman in confinement.

---

63 *Genji monogatari* 1974–75:1,83.

64 The fact that they were made of willow or peach-wood points to their magic role.
It should be noted here, that the words *hitokata* and *katashiro* were used as generic names, while the words: *amagatsu*, *agamono* and *nademono* pointed to the specific purposes of the dolls.

### 2.5. Parts of the human body

There are not many examples of using parts of the human body as magic instruments, but it does not mean that they were not so employed. In sympathetic magic all round the world human hairs, nails, blood, sweat, particles of skin and so on were used for magic purposes. In Japan we can see at least some vague suggestions of the usage. The most obvious one is the *mochi* kneaded with human hairs found in Michinaga’s well. The masters of Ommyōdō at once decided then that some unknown person had wished harm to Michinaga. One may suppose that the hairs helped them to reach the conclusion.

Other clues may be seen in the custom of burying in the garden the umbilical cord of a new-born child. It was buried there, one may suppose, as a precaution against using it for magic by a spiteful person. Cut hairs and nails were hidden, too, lest somebody might make use of them. There was also a ceremony called *kamisogi* (or *fukasogi*65) after which the cut hair of a child was thrown into the Kamo River. It is obvious that carrying the hair all the way to the river had to have a special meaning. It might be similar to burying in the ground, but possibly another principle was in operation here and the role of water was a decisive one.

Another clue may be found in the story from the *Konjaku monogatari* about the fatal adventure of Ki no Tōsuke. The parts of human bodies such as those closed in the box were perhaps believed to be useful in witchcraft, and the story reflects this belief.

### 2.6. Words

By words as magic instruments we mean spells of various kinds. Throughout the text there were mentioned recitations and incantations of sacred scriptures in the forms of *kaji*, *kitō* and *darani*. These were fragments of sutras recited in Sanskrit or in Sino-Japanese translation. Their popularity was enormous and many variants of the rites were performed – from a very simple reading by one monk to the extremely elaborate ceremonies conducted by crowds of monks using rich and variegated accessories. As the accessories the liturgical objects were employed. Magic gestures (*in, inshō*) formed auxiliary rites meant for fortifying the power of

---

65 The ceremony of cutting the hair of children (for 5 year old boys and 4 year old girls).
sacred words. The words in themselves were believed to have the power of warding off evil or evoking goodness.

The old Japanese belief in the kotodama (the spirit of the word) has become to some extent amalgamated with Buddhist belief in the power of sutras, which were professedly sermons of Buddha and as such, represented the Universal Light mighty enough to dispel darkness and all demons belonging to it. In Japan, like in China, there existed a strong conviction that “… words are no idle sounds, nor characters or pictures are merely ink or paint, but that they altogether constitute or produce the reality which they express or represent. And as any desired magical effect may be expressed in words or writing, it follows as matter of course that by means of charms and spells every imaginable thing may be effected” 66.

Independently of sacred texts recited mostly by the representatives of clergy (there were exceptions when the representatives of laity recited them as well), there were some spells in popular use like, for instance, the spell after sneezing. In the Makura no sōshi sneezing as a bad omen is mentioned three times, and at one point it is written that after a sneeze it was necessary to wish luck to the sneezing person in order to turn off a likely misfortune. Possibly in the Heian period there was already in use the kusame formula which is noted down by Kenkō hōshi in the Tsurezuregusa (dan 47) 67. The formula was a distorted form of the spell kusoku mammyō – “eternal life” (to you), usually recited after sneezing.

3. Magic: human agents

There were many magic acts which could be performed by everybody without any special preparations, and not demanding any specialized knowledge. Everybody could, and did, participate in the kiku no sechie or ayame no sechie. Everybody could say a spell after sneezing, everybody could make a katashiro for any of the four purposes, and everybody could avoid an unlucky direction or make preventive penances. In this sense everybody could, and did, act as the agent in a magic action.

It is not quite clear if all kinds of curses were possible to be proclaimed by everybody but some of them certainly were, while for the others the help of a specialist was necessary. Anyhow, it seems so, judging by the known acts of destructive magic.

Many magic actions had to be performed by the specialists of various kinds. The specialists belonged to several religious and non-religious groups. Some of

---

67 A collection of miscellany essays written about 1330–1331 by Yoshida Kaneyoshi (Kenkō). It consists of 243 paragraphs (dan).
them were employed at the court, while others – in fact, the majority of them – had their private practices outside any institutional bodies.

The specialists employed at the court may be divided into two groups: Buddhist monks and laymen.

The monks were chosen from amongst the most prominent representatives of the Shingon and Tendai sects. There were always up to ten monks called gubu (or naigubu) on duty in the Buddhist center inside the palace (Naidōjo). They performed normal religious services and, besides, they were obliged to ward off evil influences from the Emperor by reading kaji and kito. The monks on night duty (yoi no sō) were placed near the imperial bed-chamber in the Seiryōden pavilion. They stayed for the night in the Futama chamber and were always ready with their spells and incantations in case of a sudden illness or a bad dream of the Emperor. The first appointment of a monk with the title of gojisō (imperial guardian) was in 797. He was one of the most famous religious reformers of the Heian period, Saichō, better known under his posthumous appellation of Dengyō daishi (767–822), the founder of the Tendai sect.

The monks of gubu or gojisō ranks always belonged to the highest strata of Buddhist society, and thus there are many notes on them in the Heian literature. They are often praised for their holiness and their skill in mystic services. But, it seems, that sometimes even the most prominent ones were helpless when confronted with some particularly obstinate mononoke. For instance, Enchin (814–891), posthumously known as Chishō daishi, one of Saichō’s famous disciples, was employed as the gojisō and strove hard to free Empress Somedono of a mononoke, but to no avail. She died as a person possessed⁶⁸ (Ōkagami, Seiwa den). Another gojisō, Meikai, employed at the court of Gosuzaku tennō⁶⁹ was not able to solve the Emperor’s difficulties. In the Eiga monogatari it is written that Gosuzaku after a bad dream summoned Meikai and ordered him “to pray not for the matters of this world” (ima wa kono yo no inori naseso). Meikai prayed while ringing his bell, but there appeared some inauspicious omens and people watching the rites could not help to shed tears, for it was obvious to them that Meikai’s prayers would not give the desired effects⁷⁰. The Emperor abdicated and soon after that he died without ensuring the highest position for his favourite concubine, who had been the subject of Meikai’s prayers.

The most popular persons among the officially employed lay magicians were ommyōji and other functionaries of the Ommyōryō. But it should be noted that although the bureau was established in the Nara period, its functionaries did not gain a popular recognition for a long time. Even in the Reiiki (which chronologically

---

⁶⁸ Cf. chapter on devils.
⁶⁹ Reigned 1056–1045.
belongs to the Heian period) there are no mentions of ommyōji. In the Konjaku monogatari in the stories derived from the Reiiki there are ommyōji introduced in place of kaminagi of the earlier compilation. For example, the Reiiki story II, 5 describes the case of a man suffering on account of a foreign god’s tatari. As an offering for the god the man killed one cow every year. It was so for seven years and then the man all of a sudden became very ill. His family summoned a kaminagi who performed the purification services and other rites. The same story is repeated in the Konjaku monogatari (XX, 15) but there the kaminagi is replaced by an ommyōji. There are other instances of similar changes giving evidence to the growth of popularity of ommyōji between the 9th and 12th centuries. In all the novels and diaries after the period of Reiiki many masters of Ommyōdō figure quite prominently in their official capacities as well as in their role of private advisers to important personages.

As has already been stated, Kamo Yasunori and Abe Seimei belonged to the most famous masters. There were many legends woven around their persons and their achievements. Seimei’s fame is alive in Japan even to this day thanks to the kabuki play Kuzunoha. Other great names have been preserved in the Heian novels and diaries. The beginning of Yasunori’s brilliant career describes the Konjaku monogatari story (XXIV, 15).

One day Kamo Tadayuki, a master of Ommyōdō, was asked by somebody to perform the rites of exoneration. He went with his ten year old son Yasunori. When after acquitting himself of his duties he was on his way home, the boy told him that he, Yasunori, had seen about twenty or thirty creatures that had come and devoured offerings. The creatures had looked like people but yet they had not been human beings. Hearing this report Tadayuki was astounded at the boy’s keen insight into the world of demons. From then on the father began to pour his secret knowledge into his son’s ears, and soon was rewarded observing Yasunori’s fast progress and surprising achievements.

There is a big difference between the entries concerning ommyōji in diaries and those found in literary fiction. In the diaries the masters of Ommyōdō are mentioned many times as specialists summoned or consulted (officially or privately) in the following cases: for preparing horoscopes, for interpreting dreams and omens, for deciding upon the site of a new house or temple, for divining on general or specific purpose, for performing the rites of exoneration, for fixing auspicious days (for the “first letter”, “first night”, journey, etc.), for fixing auspicious directions. This means that in real life they were mostly used as diviners and sometimes as exorcists.

In the literary fiction the masters of Ommyōdō were often gifted with supernatural powers, their achievements were greatly exaggerated, and their occult art

---

71 For instance, in the Midō kampaku ki there are well over hundred entries concerning ommyōji and their activities.
was many a time identified with magic of any other kind. There is, for instance, a story about a monk who practised the art of ommyō (ommyō no zutsu or jutsu). He lived in the province of Harima and was called Chitoku hōshi. One day he met at the seashore an owner of a ship taken away by pirates. Chitoku hōshi promised to get the ship back. He went in a small boat to the exact place on the sea where the ship had been overtaken by the pirates. He wrote some characters on the water and recited some spells (umi no ue ni mono wo kakite, mono wo yomikakete...) and then he calmly returned to the shore. After seven days the ship came to the spot with the pirates aboard and all the things that had been taken by them. The pirates looked dazed, and without a protest they handed over everything to the owner.

The story is interesting as it shows a monk practising ommyō no zutsu, which means that such a secular kind of magic could also be associated with magicians of Buddhist ranks. One may venture an opinion that the story is of comparatively late origin, that it belongs to the period of far advanced syncretism in magic when some ideas were mixed together. Formerly, the Ommyōdō was recognized as the art practised by secular specialists, while Buddhist monks were popularly associated with the Shingon and Tendai mystic rites (which belonged to the orthodox magic practices) or with the senjutsu, shugendō, and other kinds of magic called collectively gesu (gejutsu), which means “unorthodox” or “outside the Way” magic art (see below). The gesu practitioners were sometimes frowned upon by the authorities, but sometimes they were summoned even to the court.

Another group of magicians employed by the court belonged to the Bureau of Medicine. The organization and staff of the bureau have already been mentioned. Here we would like to add that there was a close cooperation between the specialists of Ten’yakuryō and those of the Ommyōryō. As illustrations may serve the entries in the Shōyūki concerning the eye disease of Sanjō tennō, and the treatment of Sanesuke’s daughter. Emperor Sanjō’s illness was a very prolonged one and for many years it was treated by means of exorcisms and Buddhist masses. In 1015 there was brought from China a medicine called “red snow” (kōsetsu). On the 27th day of the 4th moon Abe Yoshihira, an ommyōji, was summoned to the palace and ordered to divine an auspicious day for the mizuho, and also to divine if the “red snow” would be good for the Emperor’s eyes. Evidently, the divination gave a positive answer, for on the 28th day there were exorcisms (kaji) performed over the medicine and, subsequently, it was administered to the Emperor. It may be added that it was not very effective, and Sanjō tennō after the treatment was still as blind as before. On the 4th day of the 5th moon a lady in waiting possessed by a spirit proclaimed that the Emperor’s illness was due to the possession by the zake (malicious spirit) of the late Emperor Beizei. Perhaps this announcement saved the reputation of the red snow and Abe Yoshihira.

---

72 Konjaku monogatari 1975:XXIV,19.
In the 11th moon of 1025 Sanesuke’s daughter had a finger bitten by a rat. The wound was bleeding alarmingly, and Sanesuke consulted Wake Sukenari, a physician, who ordered to make fomentations of brewed licorice (kanzō, Glycyrrhiza glabra), and next, to burn a cat’s excrements and to put the ash on the wound. As there was some doubt if the accident had not been caused by a supernatural power, an ommyōji was summoned, too, and asked to make a horoscope. The results of divining pointed to a mild tatari of the Kitano deity.

Ash of various origin was often applied for stopping haemorrhage. In case of Sanesuke’s daughter the cat’s excrements were proposed because the lady was bitten by a rat. It is a pure example of application of sympathetic magic in medicine.

As an illustration of the medical proficiency may serve the story from the Konjaku monogatari which is included into the part devoted to prominent specialists in various branches of science and art.

A group of men from the imperial guards (takiguchi) enjoyed themselves in the palace gardens. They sent one of them to buy sake. Many hours passed, they waited and waited, but the man did not come back. The men were disappointed and suspicious, but at last they had to give up their hope for the dispatched takiguchi’s return with sake. The next day they went to his home to inquire. It turned out that he had returned home but collapsed on a mat and could not speak a word. He looked so strange that the friends went to the most famous physician, Tamba Tadaaki. The doctor ordered to prepare a lot of ash and put the patient into the pile. After two or three hours of this treatment the patient began to show signs of recovery. They gave him some water to drink, and then he could tell them what had happened to him. When he had been just leaving the palace grounds, all around him had suddenly darkened. He had heard a roar, he had seen a brilliant light, and he had lost consciousness. Tadaaki, to whom it was reported, gave his diagnosis: the takiguchi’s illness was caused by a dragon seen by him. The story ends in praise of Tadaaki as an incomparably wise physician.

This Tadaaki was, in fact, highly valued in the highest circles of society for his medical skill. He treated the most prominent personages – Michinaga among them. In the Shōyūki the last illness of Michinaga is described. He had (among other ailments) suppurating abscesses which Tadaaki probed with a needle. During the treatment Michinaga roared with pain. The next day he died.

There were many kinds of medicines in use but it seems that they were not believed as powerful as the kaji kitō ministrations, and other magic rites. Anyhow, in the Shōyūki and Midō kampaku ki there are many entries concerning illness of one or another Emperor, Empress or Crown Prince, and there are usually given many particulars of mystic rites, while mentions of medicines are very scarce. Some
ministrating monks were highly praised, while others were condemned for their lack of positive results. The human element in treating illness was considered the most important one. It was firmly believed that people – and especially monks – could accumulate a supernatural power (ken, kenyoku, iryoku) through prayers, special diet and austerities. The monks who were believed to possess a supernatural power were particularly called genza (mighty persons, persons of might). This appellation was closely associated with shugenja, or shugyōsha – persons following the shugendō (the “way of ascetic practices”) who mostly lived in mountain hermitages or in mountain temples and practised mystic arts.

The origin and history of the shugendō movement are not quite clear. In Japanese dictionaries and standard books on history there is usually mentioned En no Ozuno as the forerunner of the movement. There are several entries concerning him scattered in chronicles of the Nara period, but the longest description is to be found in the Reiiki (I, 28). It gives the legend of Ozuno written down about a hundred years after the man’s demise, as he was supposed to live at the turn of the 7th and 8th centuries.

En no Ozuno of the Reiiki was an ubasoko (or ubasoku – Buddhist who practised the religion outside any monasteries). He was very clever and diligent in pursuance of his studies. Gaining a supernatural power was his most ardent desire. He wanted to fly and reach the land of immortals (senkyū) and then to live there in the wonderful gardens (okusai no niwa, zuigai no en) inhaling the vapours of immortality (yōshō no ki). Having this aim in view he withdrew to the Katsuragi mountain where, while living in a cavern, he practised severe austerities and studied secret formulae of the Peacock sutra (Kujaku no zuhō). After some time he attained a miraculous power and could give commands to gods and demons. He ordered demons to construct a bridge between the Katsuragi and Kimpu mountains. The demons did not like the task and the deity Hitokotonushi falsely accused Ozuno of high treason. The Emperor sent a messenger with the order to arrest Ozuno but the latter could not be caught on account of his supernatural power. Then his mother was taken as a hostage and Ozuno, showing his filial piety, surrendered to the authorities. He was banished to Izu. In daytime he stayed on an island but every night he crossed the sea and climbed Mount Fuji and practised austerities. He could fly and he could walk over the surface of the sea. He was released from Izu after three years. As he finally became an immortal he soared into the sky (tsui ni sen te narite ten ni tobiki). Before leaving the earth he bound with a spell that treacherous deity, Hitokotonushi.

It is evident from this story that there are mixed elements of Taoism and Buddhism in the legend of Ozuno. He was an ubasoko and studied the Kujaku sutra, but at the same time he longed for immortality which stood in obvious opposition to the Buddhist teaching. He practised austerities that were similar in both religions, but he used spells for harmful purpose which was tolerated neither by Buddhism
nor by Taoism. And, for a good measure, there is the Confucian element of filial piety interwoven into the story, as well.

While reading this story we must not forget that it was written down by Keikai, a man with evangelic zeal, and it was written down about a hundred years after Ozuno. During one century many elements can be changed in any legend. In case of Ozuno the Buddhist elements could have been added at the time when the Buddhist Church began to claim the exclusive right to the supernatural power of its adepts. The esoteric sects (Shingon and Tendai) from the very beginning (i.e. from the first years of the 9th century) had the ambition of monopolizing the occult arts.

In the legend of Ozuno and his followers, who were numerous, one may see other than Buddhist or Taoist elements, too, namely, the old Shintoist necromantic practices connected with the cult of mountains. “The worship of sacred mountains is of prior date to the arrival of Buddhism in Japan. We can think that Buddhism made use of this in propagation of its faith. (...) There are many mountains where the dead are said to go…”\(^75\). One of such sacred mountains was Katsuragi san where En no Ozuno lived in his cavern; another one was Kimpuzan which he wanted to unite with Katsuragi by means of a bridge. These two mountains became favourite places of ascetics practising magic arts. One may suppose that the dwellers of the mountains were recruited not necessarily from Buddhist ranks. There are documents preserved in court chronicles calling the ascetics sorcerers practising “unorthodox sorcery” (iha no zujutsu, gejutsu) and naming some of them shamans (miko, kannagi)\(^76\). From time to time there were even imperial edicts issued forbidding magic and divination practised by the dwellers of the mountains. In 807 an edict was issued in the following terms: “Priests, diviners and the like take advantage of the common people by wantonly interpreting good and evil omens. The people in their ignorance put faith in their predictions, so that gradually false cults come to flourish and evil magic to prosper. They are henceforth strictly forbidden and all persons studying these arts, or continuing to practice them, will be banished”\(^77\). The banishment of En no Ozuno to Izu may be an echo of this edict, which Keikai probably had fresh in mind while writing his Reiiki.

From Reiiki up to the Konjaku monogatari through all the novels and diaries of the period there are very many mentions of people practising sorcery. Most of them belonged to the Buddhist Church although their links with the church were often very lax. They were called variously: genza, shugenja, shugyōsha, ubasoko, biku, ubai, bikuni (the last two appellations were for women), and yamabushi\(^78\). They dressed

---

\(^75\) Kunio 1970:148,149. Cf. also Yi, Ki Yong 1974. The Buddhist Land ideologie of Silla and Japan Prevalent in the 7th and 8th Centuries as Viewed from the Viewpoint of Their Symbolic Expression. In: Kannichi kodai bunka kūshōshi kenkyū, Soul. 
\(^76\) Cf. Tarō 1975:35–54. 
\(^77\) Quoted after Sansom 1973:191. 
\(^78\) This appellation became popular after the Heian period.
in monkish garb and carried Buddhist accessories with them. They were believed to know powerful spells and, at least some of them, to possess a supernatural power. There were even contests among them (ken kurabe – “comparison of powers”). For example, the ex-Emperor Kazan, after he became a monk, studied mystic arts and accumulated a great spiritual power. He challenged another monk of the shugenja ranks and he succeeded in drawing the monk to a folding screen. He kept the monk fastened there and not able to move for some time, and at last released him\textsuperscript{79}. Wakamori Taro quotes after \textit{Shoku nihon kōki} that in 848, on the 18th day of the 2nd moon, there was in the Seiryōden pavilion performed a sutra reading. After the reading few hundred monks were subjected to an examination of their powers\textsuperscript{80}.

The comparison of powers was one of not unpopular topics in the Heian literature. One of the typical stories is in the \textit{Konjaku monogatari} about a shugyōsha from Toshino who practised austerities at the Kiyotaki River. He gained a great spiritual power but at last he became too sure of himself. It was his custom to send his bowl for water whenever he felt thirsty. The bowl flew to the river empty and returned full. One day the monk saw that another bowl flew to the river, too, and after filling itself with water it went away. Observing the phenomenon for a few consecutive days the monk decided to meet and put to trial the owner of the rival bowl. He went after the bowl into the mountains and after some wanderings he reached a small hermit’s hut bidden among profusion of wild flowers. Inside the hut sat an old man peacefully sleeping. The monk of Kiyotaki “recited a spell lighting up the fire and made some magic gestures” (\textit{kakai no shu wo yomite kaji suru ni} ...). The fire started in the hut but the old man, without opening his eyes, extinguished it with water from his censer. The water cascaded from the hut and reaching the monk of Kiyotaki put his clothes aflame. The monk burning and screaming fell on the ground. Just then the old man opened his eyes and again using the water from his censer he extinguished the flames. The monk of Kiyotaki recognized the old man’s superiority. He apologized humbly and begged to be received as a pupil. The old man did not consent\textsuperscript{81}.

Sending a bowl for water or for alms served as a favourite example demonstrating a spiritual power of a magician. This trick is described in many stories, but not all the persons who could do the trick were kept in high esteem by the authors. The monk of Kiyotaki is treated in the story with some contempt as a man who had not achieved illumination although he was clever in some tricks of a low grade. There are other tales in the \textit{Konjaku monogatari} about people (not necessarily monks) who practised the gesu magic and could change sandals or clothes into small animals. They could enter a cow or a horse through its rectum and leave

\textsuperscript{79} Ōkagami 1967:148–149.  
\textsuperscript{80} Tarō 1975:60.  
\textsuperscript{81} \textit{Konjaku monogatari} 1975:XX,39.
through its mouth. They could emit strange sounds from their abdomens, and so on. Such tricks performed only for other people’s amazement were considered sinful and, at least in some cases, were associated with tengu’s activities. In the story XX, 9 it is stated plainly that “people doing such tricks perpetrate acts which are extremely sinful” (kono yō no waza suru mono kiwamete tsumi fukai koto domo zo su). Similar conclusions may be found in other stories, too. Here we would like to recapitulate one more story which has the same special points of interest.

A young takiguchi – his name was Michinori – was sent north as an imperial messenger. On his way through the Shinano province he stopped for the night at the house of a county official. He was very hospitably received by the host and had the house left at his disposal. At night, walking through the house he encountered a sleeping beauty all alone in a room, and very encouragingly posed. He could not resist the temptation, and the lady to his amazement and delight did not protest when he entered her bed. But very soon his delight turned into an abject horror. He felt a terrible pain and jumping from the bed he discovered that he lost his penis. The lady seeing his predicament only smiled slightly. Michinori escaped to his chamber and wondering about the strange adventure he set his mind on solving the puzzle. Accordingly, he sent one of his servants to the lady. The servant returned somehow discomfited and queer but did not say anything. Michinori then sent one after another seven or eight men, and all returned with startled looks on their faces. The next day they left the house very early in the morning and were overtaken on the road by their former host’s messenger with “parting gifts” in a package. Michinori unfolded white paper and found inside nine penes. They were returned to their owners. Michinori was deeply impressed by the county official’s magic and resolved to become his pupil. After finishing his business in the north he went again to the house in Shinano and humbly asked to be received as a disciple. The host agreed to the request. He ordered Michinori to fast for seven days and to make ablutions every day. On the eighth day they went deep into the mountains. The master standing on a big river’s bank expressed his renouncement of Buddhism and “made various things and uttered unspeakably sinful oaths” (samazama no koto domo wo shite omoiwazu tsumi fukaki seigon wo namu tatekeri). Next, turning toward Michinori he said: “I’ll enter the river. You must embrace the thing that will come to you from the water, let it be a devil or a god”. So saying he entered the river. At once the sky darkened, there was a roar of thunder and a terrible wind brought rain and stirred up the water. A moment later there appeared from the river a monstrous snake. Michinori took flight in panic and hid himself in the tall grass. The master returned soon and expressed his regret at Michinori’s cowardice, but gave him one more chance. He again entered the river. This time, a monstrous boar appeared and charged at Michinori. The latter, determined to die rather than to lose his chance, caught the beast into his arms. The beast turned itself into a piece of decayed wood. The master returned again and said that because Michinori did
not stand the first test he would not be able to learn the trick with taking off penes. But because he passed agreeably the second test he would learn some other tricks. And, indeed, Michinori learned how to change sandals into puppies or into a big fish, and other harmless tricks. He became quite famous among his colleagues and his fame reached even the Emperor. The Emperor summoned him and wanted to learn the magic, too. The Emperor became so absorbed in this new amusement that he forgot about religion and, finally, he became insane. There is also a similar conclusion as in the previous story: it is an awful sin to indulge in “unorthodox magic” (sambo ni tagau jutsu).

The special points of interest in this story are: the magician of the story being a county official, which is rather unique in literary descriptions; a long account of instruction in black magic, which is rather rare; the trick with taking off penes as directly connected with the snake ordeal, which points to a phallic symbolism expressed by means of snakes; the formulated conviction that the Emperor’s insanity was caused by his overindulgence in magic. The Emperor in question was Yôzei and he was, in fact, insane; then it is explicitly said that black magic demanded a renouncement of the Buddhist religion. The latter point may show the same influence of the Buddhist Church as could be seen behind the edict of 807, and thus, we would be inclined to treat the story as belonging to the same period, the period when the reformatory zeal of Saichô and Kukai was at its peak. In the 9th century there was yet a clear demarcation line between various kinds of magic – orthodox and unorthodox from the Buddhist point of view. Later on, all kinds tended to merge, and the Buddhist monks, ommyôji and Shintô priests performed the same religious services (e.g. harae), while the kinds of magic represented by them came to be mixed together, at least in the popular perception.

The process of merging began in the mountains where the first and most important point of contact between Shintô and Buddhism occurred, and where syncretic forms of both religions were born. It was also in the mountains that the movement known as shugenjô developed, which at the beginning (in the period of En no Ozuno) was sometimes persecuted as unorthodox, but later on came to be treated tolerantly, and finally gained official acceptance. Also in the mountains some ascetics lived who did not belong to the shugenja ranks, but were also considered spiritual descendants of Ozuno.

As has already been mentioned, some Taoist elements are evident in the legend of Ozuno. Some principles of Taoism came to Japan probably long before Buddhism, but did not find a popular following. In the Heian period various Chinese legends

---

82 Konjaku monogatari 1975:XX,10.
83 Sambō – “three treasures”, i.e. Buddhism.
84 This kind of symbolism is still evident in Japan.
85 Reigned 876–884.
86 Tendai Shintô (Sanno ichijitsu Shintô), Shingon Shintô and others.
circulated among the population about Taoist immortals (alluded to in the *Makura no sōshi* and *Genji monogatari*, among others), and also at the end of the 11th century Ōe Masafusa compiled the first Japanese collection of stories about *sennin* (immortals) called *Hon chō shinsen den*. There were originally 37 stories, but 7 have been lost. Most of the stories concern people who attained a supernatural power and immortality through a special training regiment, austerities and diet. Tale number 8 is the most famous one – about the fallen *sennin* of Kume. It is repeated in the *Konjaku monogatari* (XI, 24), and later on it appears in many versions and various literary allusions. The *sennin* of Kume lost his immortality and his supernatural power when, flying over a river, he saw a girl washing clothes and in that instant he became enamoured with the girl’s white feet. He fell down, married the girl, and lived as an ordinary human being. According to the *Konjaku monogatari* version, after some time he was asked to help with the construction works in the capital. He fasted and prayed for seven days and some of his supernatural power came back to him. He caused the timber to fly over to the construction site, propelled by his will.

An earlier Japanese tale may be found in the *Reiiki* (I,13). It is repeated in the *Konjaku monogatari* (XX, 42) and it is of a special interest for us as it concerns a woman who gained a supernatural power and one day soared into the sky. Her name is given as Nuribe, a wife of Maro. It should be noted that Nuribe Maro in the *Taketori monogatari* was the bamboo-cutter who found Kaguyahime.

The *sennin* magic (*senjutsu*) was believed in, but it did not belong to those categories of magic that were considered useful in the everyday life of common people. The immortals lived somewhere in the background of the society. They were hermits without any social ambitions – neither fearful like *tengu* nor helpful like *shugyōsha* – and it was not practical to seek their advice in case of emergency. The stories about them formed colourful fairytales, pleasant topics of conversation, and as such entered literary fiction, but did not find their way into the diaries.

There was yet another group of magicians, perhaps the most numerous one, which exercised great influence upon people of non-aristocratic classes. It was the caste of shamans operating in the countryside or among the ignorant masses of town folk.

Shamanic practices are the oldest magic practices in Japan. They originated in times immemorial from animistic beliefs and necromantic rites. They are well documented in the *Kojiki* and *Nihongi*, but later on they show a tendency to disappear from written documents. As has already been remarked, after the period of *Reiiki* the mentions of *miko* or *kannagi* become very scarce, and native diviners, necromancers and healers are more and more often replaced by *shugenja* and *ommyōji*. It does not mean that they gradually disappeared from real life. Far from it. There are in the Heian literature (*Genji monogatari*, *Eiga monogatari*, *Makura no sōshi*, etc.) many fragmentary remarks showing various *miko* or *kannagi* as
forming an integral part of society. But they are treated with scorn by writers who thought Buddhist and Ommyōdō magic much superior to native practices. Native shamans simply fell out of favour, had gone out of fashion among members of the aristocratic society. Nevertheless, when other, more fashionable means of healing have failed, even at the highest level of society people would turn for help to those unpopular specialists. For example, when the “red snow” failed to cure Emperor Sanjō’s eye disease, there was on the 13th day of the 6th moon summoned a male shaman (onoko kannagi) to treat the Emperor in the old, traditional manner (Midō kampaku ki). Michinaga does not give any description of the treatment, but one may suppose that it was something similar to the treatment described by Sei Shōnagon but on a more grand scale.

Even if native practices have been pushed aside and, to some extent suppressed by the kaji kito rites, they have shown an astounding vitality. In present day Japan there are many still active female healers, sorcerers and diviners called miko, or ichiko or, in some regions, monoshiribito. The latter name is of ancient origin – it appears in old ritual prayers, norito where it indicates “people who could understand spirits”. There have always been people credited popularly with the power of communicating with spirits and of influencing them in the interest of individuals or a community. In Japan this belief is of greatest antiquity, and it seems that mostly women have been cast for the role of intermediaries between this world and the world of spirits. It can be explained on the one hand by the tradition going back to the times of matriarchy when the female sovereigns had to combine their political authority with the sacerdotal one. On the other hand, women have always been more impressionable, physically and mentally weaker than men, and therefore more easily stirred to ecstatic states which have always been treated as signs of spirits’ descendence into human beings.

It is generally asserted that suggestion and autosuggestion have always been important elements in honestly practised shamanism and also in other than shamanic exorcising, divining or healing rites. By “honest shamanism” we mean here various divining, exorcising or healing practices performed by people who are deeply convinced that they can really see or hear or in any other way perceive spirits’ messages. The effects of suggestion or hypnosis may be recognized in the trances of yorimashi. Probably not everybody could have been chosen for the role. It was probably believed that the ability to become an animated medium for spirits was a supernatural gift manifesting itself spontaneously in some persons only. The yorimashi had to be persons prone to hypnotic influences. They were chosen mostly

---

87 Ikeda 1974:208.
88 The norito have been handed down in unchanged form from the past unknown. They were written down in 927 as a part of the Engishiki compilation (scroll 8).
89 The component mono means, of course, “spirits”.
from amongst young girls. In their trances they uttered oracles and revelations which they did not remember afterwards. The seance described by Sei Shōnagon is a very typical one. A similar description may be found in the *Genji monogatari*, but there a little boy is shown as a *yorimashi*.

An untypical example of self-suggestion may be brought up here, that of poor Chisō – the *azari* who became possessed by a *mononoke* during Empress Akiko’s confinement. His case is quite an ironical one, for it was his role to control the traffic of spirits and to direct them into the bodies of substitutes. But evidently he was so overpowered by the noise and the general atmosphere of anxiety that he succumbed to hysterics interpreted by himself in terms of possession by a *mononoke*.

The self-conviction that they could communicate with various spirits was at the base of activity of shamans, *shugenja*, *ommyōji*, and other miracle-doers if they treated their vocations honestly and seriously. But certainly, there were also dishonest individuals occupying themselves with pretended magic arts, who consciously deceived ignorant people by means of ventriloquy, hypnosis, and tricks of legerdemain. Such individuals may be recognized in some magicians’ descriptions and condemned by the author of the *Konjaku monogatari* in several tales.
IV. MANTIC PRACTICES

The wish to penetrate the darkness of the future or hidden things of the past and present has been common to all people in the world since times immemorial. In Japan, archeology reveals traces of practising scapulomancy (futomani) in the earliest neolithic period. All the written documents, beginning from the Kojiki and Nihongi, include numerous mentions of variegated mantic practices. The Taihō code established two important government offices concerned with divination: one of them was Ommyōryō under the Ministry of Central Affairs, the other belonged to the Jingikan and consisted of specialists called urabe.

Urabe was the general term for diviners. In ancient Japan in various localities several professional groups were called by that word (ura means “divination”, be – “professional group”). The most famous ones came from Izu, Iki and Tsushima, and amongst them, the most outstanding individuals were employed at the court. According to Wada Eishō91, the Jingikan customarily employed in the Heian period five urabe from Izu, five from Iki, and ten from Tsushima. The word, primarily denoting the professional function only, came to be used as the surname. The professional Urabe developed into clans in the capital as well as in the provinces. Their functions were hereditary and chiefly concerned with divination. Such ritual activities as casting the nademono into the river during the ceremony of ōharae, or pronouncing ritual prayers at the time of some other Shintoist ceremonies92 belonged to less frequently performed but also very important functions.

The urabe who continued the old tradition of mantic practices used quite a primitive method of divination by a tortoise shell, called kame ura (or kame no uranai, kiboku). In comparison with ommyōji, their activities were limited and they were not very popular among the common people. Probably the kame ura method was considered too troublesome and too old-fashioned. Nevertheless, the urabe

92 E.g. hishizume no matsuri, michiae no matsuri, etc.
held firmly their position of official diviners in all matters pertaining to Shintō in
those aspects which were sponsored by the ruling dynasty.

The official diviners of both governmental organs were continuously kept busy
with many matters pertaining to the affairs of the state, and also with private mat-
ters of the imperial family. They received their ranks, offices and their salaries
exclusively for such services. They could just as well be employed, as it has already
been mentioned by private persons, and then were given additional allowances.

The official duties of diviners included activities for various purposes and were
executed by various methods. At the court they had, if not a monopoly, then at
least a predominance over other practitioners. Outside the court they had many
competitors.

The results of divination (independently of the agent or method) have always
had two aspects; some of them formed revelations of the future, while others were
advisory, or both aspects could have been mixed. By revelations of the future we
mean here horoscopes and foretelling future events or effects of some undertakings,
and foretelling people's good or bad fortune. Such revelations concerned matters
believed to have been determined and unchangeable and, consequently, demanded
no overt action, but only a passive acknowledgement. By advisory results we mean
those which led people to some action directed at avoiding evil or bringing out
luck. Both aspects of divination – as a knowledge in itself and as an advice (often
subsidiary or preparatory to magic) are evident in the main two branches of man-
tic practices (except prognostication) we would like to mention, namely: deliberate
divination or divination proper, and interpretation of dreams and omens.

1. Divination proper

Into this category we include all mantic practices which were deliberately under-
taken by people in order to obtain a forecast or advice by supernatural means. They
ranged from very simple actions to elaborate services which employed many peo-
ple. Some of them were based on intuitive methods, others demanded the use of
sophisticated pseudo-scientific apparatus. Most of them have survived up to this
day\(^{93}\). In our review we shall limit ourselves to the most popular ones.

1.1. Clairvoyance

There have always been persons possessing, or claiming to possess, a sup-
natural power of seeing things unseen by other people or hearing thing unheard

\(^{93}\) Hearn 1960:151–152.
by others. It was believed that such a gift could have been developed by special austerities or could have been inborn. Some practitioners had to make prolonged preparations in order to achieve a proper psychomantic state of mind and body. In order to come into contact with spirits they had to abstain from food, sexual intercourse and other activities considered ritually impure. Such fasting often leads to abnormal psychical states – ecstasy, hypnosy, autohypnosy, hallucinations which are interpreted as signs of having achieved contact with supernatural powers. There were also practitioners who could divine while refraining from any special preparation, with or without any particular inspiration. Theirs was an inborn talent. It could have been false or possibly real. About the latter kind Moszyński writes “it would be nonsense to eliminate in limine the possibility of its existence”.

In the Ōkagami (pp.168–169) and in the Konjaku monogatari (XXXI, 26) a lady appears who was known as Uchifushi no miko (shamaness in the reclining position). She gained that cognomen because she divined reclining on her back. She was a well-bred lady. She claimed that a deity of the Kamo shrine spoke through her, and she could tell people’s past and future very accurately. According to the Ōkagami, Kaneie was under such a deep impression of her words that he engaged her on a permanent basis. Whenever he wanted a forecast or an advice, he would dress in his ceremonial garments and visit her. He let her put her head on his lap and divine in this position. Never once was he disappointed in her predictions.

In the Konjaku monogatari version it is said that Uchifushi was famous for her fortune-telling and people from all over the city gathered at her house. From time to time it happened that she was mistaken, but in a great majority of cases she was unfailingly right.

It seems that the lady was an authentic person as there is in the Makura no sōshi a lady in waiting mentioned who was a “daughter of Uchifushi”.

In both texts concerning Uchifushi no miko it is not stated whether she heard the voice of the Kamo deity or if she saw some images which she interpreted. In case of a monk called Tōshō the Konjaku monogatari text is more explicit. He could tell the future by looking at people, observing their behaviour and listening to their voices. Besides, he also had premonitions.

One day passing the Suzakumon gate he saw a crowd of people resting under its roof. They looked to him as if they were to die soon. He wondered why it was so. Eliminating all possible reasons he reached the conclusion that the structure would fall down. He warned the people. There was panic, people began to run in

---

94 Moszyński 1934:417.
95 Ibid., 368, footnote 2.
96 She is also called kannagi in the same paragraph.
all directions, and then the roof of the gate broke down and the whole structure collapsed to the ground. Those who were slow escaping died on the spot.

The same Tōshō stayed at his home on one rainy night. From the street the sound of flute music came to him. Listening to it for a moment Tōshō became sure that the flutist was destined to die very soon. He was greatly surprised the next day when he heard again the same sounds of the flute. He could not believe his ears and he invited the flutist home. It appeared then that the flutist had participated in a Buddhist ceremony at night. It had saved his life. And Tōshō’s reputation or self-esteem, too.

1.2. Physiognomy

Tōshō was able to tell the future of people by looking at their faces, but we do not classify his method as physiognomy (kansō, ninsō) because he based his predictions on intuition, while physiognomy was considered to be a branch of science. There were various textbooks explaining how to interpret the most minute details of facial structure and expressions. There were specialists (sōnin) who practised the native physiognomy (yamato sō) and from time to time Korean physiognomists appeared in the capital, too. It seems that this kind of divination was very popular as there are many mentions concerning the subject in most of the novels and in some diaries.

There are some longish descriptions of physiognomists at work in the Ōkagami. At first there was a Buddhist monk called Jinzen (?–990). One day summoned to the palace he was engaged by several ladies in waiting. He was asked about the fortunes of Fujiwara Michitaka, the latter’s brother Michikane, and his son Korechika. Jinzen foretold their particular fortunes but each time he ended his prophecy with a remark on the splendid future of Michinaga. His obstinate repetitions turned the attention of the listeners to the favoured man. “Why do you speak of him in this way?” they asked. The physiognomist explained that Michinaga’s features are the most promising according to the rules of physiognomy. They are “like a tiger’s cub crossing a peak of a steep mountain” (tora no ko no kewashiki yama no mine wo wataru ga gotoshi), which are the most favourable among all possible features.

This fragment ends with a high praise of Jinzen’s foresight. The next fragment shows a Korean to whom many people came to have their fortunes told. It seems that his customers came from every strata of the society. Among them, as seen by

99 It looks like a quotation from a textbook on physiognomy but the source is unknown. Cf. Ōkagami 1967:220, commentary 13.
100 Ibid., 220–221.
Shigeki (one of the narrators in the Ōkagami) there were highest dignitaries of the state (brothers Tokihira, Nakahira and Tadahira) and many people of the commoners’ class. Shigeki himself was of a humble origin. During his second visit to the Korean he saw Fujiwara Saneyori disguised as a commoner, too. The physiognomist recognized him at once as a nobleman\textsuperscript{101}.

A remark of Shigeki is of some interest. When asked by somebody if he had been to a physiognomist (sōnin) he answered “I have not been to such a man, but went only to a Korean…” (saru hito ni mo miehaberazariki, Tada Komabito no moto ni…)\textsuperscript{102}. It looks from it that by the word sōnin (without any qualifier) only a Japanese physiognomist was meant. The word tada “but only” in Shigeki’s answer has perhaps a slight pejorative flavour.

The Genji monogatari also gives an interesting insight concerning a Korean physiognomist. At the time when the Emperor, Genji’s father, was most troubled about the boy’s prospects, a very clever Korean physiognomist came to the capital. In deepest secret the Emperor had the boy disguised as a child of a low rank retainer and sent to the Korean\textsuperscript{103}. The physiognomist was enchanted by the boy’s noble aspect and unusual mental abilities, but he advised against promoting him to the highest dignity. The Emperor, much impressed, summoned the court astrologer and the latter’s opinion did not differ from that of the Korean. Thus, Genji’s destiny was sealed. The name Minamoto was bestowed on him and he was in this manner cut off from any aspirations to the throne\textsuperscript{104}.

**1.3. Astrology and horoscopy**

The astrologer who influenced Genji’s destiny is called in the text sukuyō no kashikoki michi no hito which may be translated as “a clever man perusing the way of stars”. The word sukuyō (or sukuyōdō) denoted and astrological system of Hindu origin which came to Japan via China together with Buddhism by which it had been adopted and codified in the form of the Sukuyōkyō sutra. The system was based on not very precise astronomical observations and on the belief that there existed a close correlation between the movements of celestial bodies and the human world. It was believed that by observing the way of the stars it was possible to predict people’s future, to designate their auspicious or inauspicious days and directions. The system centered around seven stars which corresponded to seven days of the week, hence the second component yō (days) in the word sukuyō. The first com-

\textsuperscript{101} Ibid., 279–280.
\textsuperscript{102} Ibid., 279.
\textsuperscript{103} It was impossible to summon him to the palace because of prohibitive regulations issued during Uta tennō’s reign.
\textsuperscript{104} Genji monogatari 1974–5:I,43–5.
ponent sukū (lodging or station) indicated 28 points of intersection of the so called “white way” of the moon with the “yellow way” of the sun and with the “red way” of the central stars. It was believed that the celestial bodies repeated their respective rounds every day and night, and that they had their transitory lodgings on the points of intersection.

From the Heian literature the sukuyōdō does not emerge as a clearly defined system either scientific or mantic. According to the Heian chō bungaku jiten, it was even mixed in the popular imagination with the physiognomy. Such a conclusion seems to be rather exaggerated. It probably depended on the individual. Lady Murasaki never mixed such things, as it is evident from the above described fragment of the Genji monogatari. For her physiognomy was quite a different method of fortune-telling than astrology. But she was probably an exceptionally gifted person and, judging by her works, with a strong inclination for “pigeonholing” various problems. To other, less clever people, the ultimate purpose of fortune telling was the most important and they were not concerned with the methods, which they left to specialists.

Some confusion could have existed in case of astrology as all the matters connected with the celestial bodies were left to the Ommyōryō functionaries. They adopted the sukuyō system but, it seems, the system tended to be merged with the Chinese calendrical divination based on the ommyō gogyō setsu.

It should be repeated here that the ommyō gogyō theory was founded on the on and yō dichotomy expressing itself in five elements: fire, water, wood, metal and earth. The elements were not thought of in the terms of concrete embodiments of these substances but as abstract powers correlated to other abstract ideas such as: directions, colours, numbers, tastes, smells, human organs, etc. For example, the element “fire” had its correlatives in: southern direction, red colour, number 7, bitter taste, burning smell, human lungs, etc. Such and other similar categories constituted “a network of relationships knitting the human and nonhuman parts of the cosmos into a single fabric. A pull on one thread in this fabric would inevitably produce effects elsewhere. Done in the wrong way, it might induce strains which could tear the fabric, but properly performed, it could relieve such strains and restore the fabric to its original equilibrium.” The art of divination called shikisen was based on such premises. The term may be translated as calendrical divination or, perhaps, horoscopy, though both English terms are not quite adequate. The shikisen divination was performed by means of the shikiban (divining board) on which various combinations of cosmic correlatives were graphically represented

---

105 See Heian chō bungaku jiten 1972:376. This conclusion is based on a fragment in the Hamamatsu chūnagon monogatari, and other unspecified sources.
107 Ibid.
and oriented according to the points of compass, according to the season, year and
day, and according to the cyclic movements of divinities governing the respective
points in time and space.

The system was a very complicated one and demanded high skill in mathemat-
ics. It was exclusively the domain of onmyōji whose one of the most important
duties was the presentation of seasonal horoscopes to the Emperor and the Coun-
cil of State, and also the preparation of the guchūreki calendars with the aim to
designate all the inauspicious days (kuenichi, kannichi, imibi and others).

1.4. Divination by the Book of Change

While writing about divination in Japan at the close of the 19th century Cham-
berlain wrote: “... but the greatest favourite is divination by means of the Eight
Diagrams of classical China. No careful observer can walk through the streets of
any large city without noticing here and there a little stall were a fortune-teller sits
with his divining rods in front of him, and small blocks inscribed with sets of
horizontal lines, some whole, some cut in two. The manipulation of these para-
phernalia embodies a highly complicated system of divination called Eki, literally
“Changes”, which is of immemorial antiquity...”108. We can repeat it word for word
after the distinguished Author even now, in the seventies of the 20th century.

That system of divination was very well known in the Heian period, although
it was possibly not as popular as the shikisen system. Eki (or ekizei, eki no ura) was
original divination corpus probably dates from early Chou. The supplemental 10
‘wings’ or appendices – falsely attributed by some to Confucius – are probably of
varying Chou or early Han date”110. The text expresses the ideas of pre-Confucian
and pre-Taoist philosophy which was based on the dualistic theory of female and
male principles producing all phenomena through their interaction. That unending
process of interblending is symbolised in the Book of Change in the form of trigrams
consisting of broken (female) and unbroken (male) lines. There are eight trigrams
called: ken, da, ri, shin, son, kan, gon, kon. The combinations of every two trigrams
give 64 hexagrams. All hexagrams are provided with explanations in the form of
the main text, commentaries and additional information in regard to the so called
moving or dynamic lines. On account of the appearance of dynamic lines there are
possibly more than 4 thousand answers to every question.

108 Chamberlain 1905:121.
109 “The singular form “Change” instead of “Changes” follows after Blofeld, John 1965. The
Book of Change, London.
110 Quoted after Bodde 1975:408.
In order to determine the lines, the diviner needs fifty divining rods (medoki, zeichiku). By dividing them into groups containing from one to four rods, and then bunching them together eighteen times, the diviner establishes six lines forming one hexagram. Every line is established by three counting processes. If all six lines are static then the resulting hexagram contains the whole answer to the question. In case of dynamic lines in the hexagram, the answer becomes more detailed, as the interpreter must examine more data in three stages: 1) the initial hexagram; 2) each dynamic line separately (one to six possibilities); and 3) a new hexagram must be formed in which every dynamic line is converted into its opposite, and then, that new hexagram must be analysed. If some disparities occur between the answers found in the first hexagram as a whole and in its dynamic lines – then the meaning expressed by the lines must be given precedence over the main text. In case of contradictions between the initial hexagram and the second one, there is no need to give precedence because the contradictions express two stages of the same idea.

In the eki divination the advisory aspect was more pronounced. It gave answers to specific questions, mostly in the form of hints or vague pointers to the best course in a given situation.

One may suppose that the ladies of the Heian period had no questions to ask – the eki ura method does not appear in their diaries, while in the diaries of gentlemen (Midō kampaku ki, Shōyūki) it is mentioned several times.

1.5. Mixed and miscellaneous mantle practices

Astrology, horoscopy, physiognomy and divination by means of the Book of Change belonged to the sophisticated, pseudoscientific mantic methods, which demanded text books and a specialized knowledge on the part of diviners. The kame no ura divination formed also a hermetic, narrow specialization guarded closely by the urabe diviners. All these methods, except physiognomy, were reserved for the aristocracy on account of the agents employing them. Judging by the pertinent entries in the Midō kampaku ki, the private services of ommyōji were expensive. Besides, the specialists on the government payroll belonged to the privileged class and did not like imparting their knowledge to commoners. And conversely, the members of aristocracy did not seek revelations or advice on their future from the diviners of lower classes. Because of that rigid class distinction we know very little about other methods of divination which certainly must have existed among the common people.

Various practices of a very primitive kind have survived up to the present. Their origin may be found in the pre-Heian times, but they are either not documented or documented inadequately in the Heian literature. Here and there one may only get a glimpse of something like a divining method though insufficient for even the
scantiest description. Besides, as has been written above, the results of divination were over-important for most of the Heian authors and they did not trouble themselves with mentioning the method employed. Hence, there are abundant entries concerning divination in the whole Heian literature, but they are often limited to sentences like, “he ordered to cast a horoscope”, “in the result of divination”, “according to the forecast”, and similar.

The words used most often for divination were: uranai, semboku, bokusen as general terms, and for specialized methods, senzei or zeisen, zeichiku, medogi, bokuzei\(^\text{111}\) – for divination by means of 50 divining rods; hakke or hakka, sengi – for divination by means of blocks with trigrams. The last two groups were connected with the Book of Change but could have been employed for divination independent of the text.

In case of an extraordinary occurrence or a national emergency several divining methods were used. For example, in 1006, on the 15th day of the 11th moon there was a fire in the palace, and the sacred mirror – one of the three imperial regalia – was partly destroyed. After the event a discussion developed whether it was proper to cast a new mirror or if it was better to repair the old one. On the 10th day of the 12th moon a messenger was dispatched to the Ise jingū with the intelligence of the misfortune. On the 3rd day of the 7th moon of 1007 the great council of state congregated in the presence of the Emperor, and opinions of specialists in the form of kamon documents were submitted. The kamon (or kammon, kangaebumi) were the written answers to queries put by the Emperor or the government on such unusual occasions. Depending on the occasion, opinions were required from the specialists on etiquette and precedents, or from various diviners. In the case of the sacred mirror all possible opinions were sought for. Michinaga (the chronicler of the event) mentions that at the meeting were read the kamon of specialists on Japanese classics (kiden), on Chinese classics (myōkyō), of lawyers (myōhō) and of ommyōji. Besides these, there were employed the kame no ura and medogi methods of divination\(^\text{112}\).

A separate group of mantic practices constituted various gyōji (ceremonies) and shinji (sacred events) devoted to prognostication of the next season’s harvest. To this group belonged contests and matches carried out at the court (gyōji) and in many Shintō shrines (shinji) during annual festivals. The most famous ones were horse races (kurabeuma) in the Kamo shrine during the great festival of the 4th moon. On New Year’s Day other shrines held archery contests (matoi), and on yet other occasions there were contests called yabusame that combined both skills –

\(^{111}\) Zeichiku and bokuzei were words denoting bamboo rods, medogi or medohagi were rods made of lespedeza. The words were used for the instruments themselves, and also as synonymous with divination.

\(^{112}\) Finally it was decided that it was not proper to cast a new mirror, as the old one contained the soul (tama) preserved since the “period of gods”.
riding and shooting. Square wooden targets were set up in three places and the riders had to hit them from a running horse. Other contests – sumo (Japanese wrestling) were held in early autumn at the court and during some festivals in shrines. Two teams of wrestlers chosen from all regions of the country were used to divine whether the year’s crops would be plentiful.

No special knowledge was required from the diviners in that kind of prognostication. They were only supervising the event and formulating the questions. The contestants, however, had to be the best obtainable riders or marksmen or wrestlers, and it was their sacred duty to exert themselves to the utmost of their abilities.

Another kind of forecast was called *kayu ura no shinji* and was held at the court and in shrines on the 15th day of the 1st moon. Rice gruel (*kayu*) or gruel made of small beans was cooked. Hollow bamboo sticks were put into the pot with the gruel. By observing how much gruel or how many beans entered particular sticks it was predicted whether the harvest would be good or bad. That sacred event once had also had some magic connotations. It was believed that the sticks (*kayuzue, kayu no ki*) used for stirring the gruel had a procreative powers if a childless woman was hit with such a stick she would soon conceive a child. The belief developed into the custom of engaging women in a playful combat at the court and in private mansions (mentioned, inter alia, in the *Makura no sōshi*, *Kagerō nikki*, *Genji monogatari*). On that particular day the women tried to hit others while not being hit themselves. The jocular atmosphere surrounding the event points to its devaluation as a magic practice.

The simplest kind of fortune telling for private use was based on performing some action and according to its result to receive a “yes” or “no” answer to a problem. For example, during an archery contest held in front of Michitaka’s mansion many courtiers were gathered. Suddenly Michinaga appeared and challenged the Fate: “If Emperors and Empresses are to be born to Michinaga’s family, let the arrow hit the target!”, and then: “If I am destined to become sesshō and kampaku, let the arrow hit!” His arrows, one after another, hit exactly the same spot. As it turned out later, the answers thus received were quite correct. A similar kind of prognostication has already been described – the one concerning Morosuke throwing the dice. This kind of private divination was probably not limited to the aristocracy only. Everybody could make a similar plead and get an answer to a problem.

The *Ōkagami* mentions yet another divining method which seems to have been regarded as not very dignified. It was called *yuuke* (or *yuura*) – nocturnal divination. The prophecy was acquired by eavesdropping. It was necessary to go at night to

---

113 Similar contests were held in private mansions of the highest dignitaries, but without the aim of prognostication; e.g. in the diary of Michinaga there are mentioned horse races, archery contests and sumo matches in Michinaga’s residences.

some place at the cross-roads and hide oneself. Listening to the words of passers-by uttered while just passing the hide-out, one could divine one’s future. The Ōkagami describes an incident with Tokihime, the primary consort of Kaneie. She went to Nijō Street at night with the purpose of obtaining *yuuke* and then she met an old lady who foretold her a splendid future\(^\text{115}\). The author of the Ōkagami tried to explain such an improper conduct of Tokihime by her very young age at the time.

2. Interpretation of dreams and omens

In the human endeavour to understand and utilize phenomena which were treated as signals prophesying the future, the mantle practices, which we call divination proper, demanded a deliberate action provoking the appearance of the signals. The action could take the form of a visit to a physiognomist, casting a horoscope, a seance with a clairvoyant, making a sumo match for prognostication, or asking a specific question and obtaining the answer by means of the *kame no ura* or *eki no ura*. By employing all these and similar methods people took upon themselves the role of active agents evoking desired reactions.

In the case of dreams considered prophetic, and of occurrences considered portentous, people were only passive receivers of the signals, and their activity, if they wished so, was limited to attempts at interpretation (with one exception, which will be explained below, in 2.1.). Certainly, not all dreams and all extraordinary occurrences were believed to be prophetic. Very often the decision was left to the specialists, and it happened that even the specialists were at a loss whether to treat some dream or event as prognostic or not.

2.1. Dreams

Dreams (*yume, musō*) as revelations from the world beyond appear in the literature of the Heian period from the Reiiki through diaries and fiction, up to the *Konjaku monogatari*. It is characteristic that in the Reiiki very few of them are described, and it seems that in later times the belief in dreams gradually grew in strength and popularity. To a certain extent, it was probably a result of a strong influence brought by the vast literary fiction. Dreams of a fearful or romantic kind became a favourite topic of various *monogatari*. They appealed strongly to the reading circles of society and helped to make people more aware of their own dreams. Not without meaning was also the growing efficiency of *ommyōji* who succeeded in elevating the art of dream interpretation to the rank of the highest and secret

\(^{115}\) Ōkagami 1967:170.
science. Their knowledge was based on learned Chinese books and they restricted their services to persons of wealth, which added to their own authority. Quite apart from them, professional interpreters of dreams called yumetoki were very active, too, continuing the native tradition of shamans. Their advice was often sought for and their words were taken seriously. Not consulting a yumetoki was sometimes considered as a grave negligence. For instance Akiko, a secondary wife of Michinaga, was crestfallen when her son Akinobu took the vows and became a monk in the Enryakuji. In her desperation she regretted deeply that she had not consulted a yumetoki after a dream in which she had seen herself with her hair cut. She believed that she could have changed the turn of events if she had her dream interpreted properly\(^\text{116}\).

In the Ōkagami there are several paragraphs concerning dreams and their interpretation (yumeawase, yumeuranai). In one of them it is stated that “at that time some of the dream interpreters and necromancers were, indeed, very clever” (sono toki wa yumetoki mo kaminagi mo kashikoki mono domo no haberishi zo). That statement was made on account of a dream concerning Kaneie. When his elder brother Kanemichi reached the peak of his prosperity and became the sesshō, Kaneie’s official career came to a standstill. He remained closed at his home at Higashi Sanjō and worried himself sick. Then somebody had a dream and reported it to Kaneie: a lot of arrows flew from the Horikawa residence of Kanemichi and were falling down on the Higashi Sanjō residence of Kaneie. The man reporting the dream was worried because the arrows flew from an unlucky direction. Kaneie consulted a yumetoki and was greatly relieved hearing that the dream had been, after all, a very good one. Its meaning foretold that the helm of the state would pass over from the Horikawa sesshō to Kaneie\(^\text{117}\).

The same source through the mouth of its narrator states that people were often mistaken in their interpretations of dreams and omens, and warns against a risk of changing an auspicious dream into a bad omen. Fujiwara Morosuke once had a very interesting dream but being young and inexperienced boasted of it in front of other people. He had dreamt that he had stood before the Suzakumon gate with his legs spread apart from Nishi Ōmiya to Higashi Ōmiya\(^\text{118}\) and facing north he kept the palace in his arms. It seemed to be a wonderful prophecy, but then a witty lady listening to the story exclaimed: “How painful it must have been to your crotch!” (ika ni o mata itaku owashimashitsuran) and by this untimely remark destroyed the prospects of Morosuke. The author of the Ōkagami goes as far as to say that, in fact, because of the lady’s indiscreet joke Morosuke did not succeed in gaining the office.

\(^{116}\) Ōkagami 1967:221.
\(^{117}\) Ibid., 168.
\(^{118}\) It was quite a distance! Between Nishi (Western) Ōmiya and Higashi (Eastern) Ōmiya avenues there were many other avenues of considerable width.
of sesshō and kampaku. “There was a saying from ancient times that even an extremely auspicious dream changes (its meaning) if it is improperly interpreted” (imijiki kissō no yume mo ashizama ni awasetsureba tagau) – says the narrator and warns his audience against talking about dreams in front of unwise people\textsuperscript{119}.

This warning gives evidence to the belief in magic power ascribed to dreams. It means that for the mentality of the Heian people the dreams themselves were powerful enough to change for worse one’s fate if improperly treated. But one may suppose that it was possible also to change a bad dream into a good portent.

It is not explicitly told in any of our sources but such a conclusion may be drawn indirectly. In the Hōryūji monastery there is a statue of Yumetagae Kannon (Dream-changing Kannon). The statue was made in the Nara period and since then it has been popularly believed that it might change bad dreams into good portents. The belief has not disappeared up to the present.

The lazy life of the Heian aristocracy probably made people very susceptible to dreams. It is especially true for the female part of the society. But, understandably, there were different personalities and proneness to having visions depended on the degree of personal inclinations. For example, in the Makura no sōshi there is only one note concerning dreams, under the heading of “Joyous things” (Ureshiki mono): “One had a strange dream and one’s breast is full of anxiety. Then it is explained that it was nothing special. What a joy!”\textsuperscript{120}. That one note means that Sei Shōnagon believed in prophecies expressed in dreams but she was not obsessed by them. In the Murasaki Shikibu niki there is no single mention of a dream, while in the Genji monogatari there are many stories evolved around prophetic dreams. Again it may mean that though believing in dreams the lady herself was not prone to have them, or to treat them as prophetic. But it should be always remembered that not all dreams were recorded. Only such found their way to diaries which had been considered especially interesting, or which had made a particularly deep impression.

In the Kagerō niki (taking into account the authoress’ neurotic personality) the number of recorded dreams is not too high, as there are only ten dreams mentioned in twenty-two years. The authoress of the Sarashina niki noted down nine dreams (and some additional divagations on them) in over thirty years, which also does not seem to be many, as the lady clearly belonged to the dreamy, visionary kind of persons. In the Midō kampaku ki Michinaga noted down sixteen dreams. Some of them were not his own but somebody else’s. The latter group seems to have been quite seriously treated and sometimes people went to great troubles to inform another person about the dream in which the person appeared.

For example, lady Kagerō received a letter from a monk who described his dream concerning her and insisted on submitting it to a professional yumetoki. In his dream

\textsuperscript{119} Ibid., 129–30.
\textsuperscript{120} Makura no sōshi 1958:280.
the monk had seen the lady holding the sun and the moon in her hands. She had
the moon crushed under her feet while the sun she had held tightly to her breast.
The lady, on acquiring the letter, did not even want at first to consult a yumetoki,
but it just happened that she met one and then she told him about the dream. On
hearing it, the interpreter was quite excited and foretold a splendid future for the
lady and her family. The lady, being a person of a very pessimistic turn of mind,
thought sadly that the yumetoki was probably a good specialist but the monk who
had sent the letter was a suspicious character\(^{121}\). Soon afterwards somebody else
informed the lady about another dream. Her mansion appeared in it as having the
gate especially ornate, which was interpreted as a sure sign that somebody in her
immediate family would become a minister of state. And then she herself had
a dream, too: a man wrote the word “gate” on her right foot. According to the inter-
pretation, this dream indicated a wonderful future for her son. But the lady was not
satisfied and nurtured grave doubts as for the truth of all the lucky prophecies\(^{122}\).

According to the Ōkagami, Fujiwara Yukinari lived in the constant fear of Fuji-
waras’s ghost. His fear was well known among the courtiers. One night
Michinaga saw a dream in which Asanari stood in one of the palace pavilions, and
said that he was waiting for Yukinari. Awaking from his dream Michinaga at once
wrote a letter to Yukinari: “I had a dream. Excuse yourself on a pretext of illness
or something, and remain indoors performing severe abstinence [\textit{monoimi}]. I’ll
explain personally”. Yukinari took the warning seriously and closed himself at home
for a considerable period of abstinence\(^{123}\).

The same Yukinari once had another information about somebody else’s dream
concerning his family. The story is more interesting as it certainly does not belong
to literary fiction. It is described in the \textit{Sarashina nikki}. To the house of the author-
ess came a stray cat of distinguished manners and noble appearance. For some time
it was kept in the same room as the authoress and her elder sister. But once, when
the sister was ill, the cat was banished to the servants’ quarters where it protested
loudly. And then the sister had a dream. The cat came to her and explained: “I am
the [late] daughter of dainagon [Yukinari] in another form” and the cat demanded to
be taken again to the sister’s room. The authoress afterwards took a special care of
the cat and observing it closely concluded that “it was not an ordinary cat” (\textit{rei no
neko ni wa arazu}). Then it was decided to inform Yukinari about the revelation\(^{124}\).

This Buddhist idea of metempsychosis is very well evidenced in literary fiction.
Many such stories of animals revealing their identity in dreams (as some definite
people in their former existence) appear in the \textit{Reiiki} and \textit{Konjaku monogatari}.

\(^{121}\) \textit{Kagerō nikki} 1966:260–1.
\(^{122}\) Ibid., 261.
\(^{123}\) \textit{Ōkagami} 1967:141–2.
It seems that cows were the most popular in such stories125. But sometimes other animals appear, too, like for example a fish in the *Konjaku monogatari* XX, 34, which revealed itself through a dream as the late father of a monk Jōkaku. The cat of the *Sarashina nikki* may be treated as evidence that the belief in this kind of revelations through dreams did not belong exclusively to literary fiction. Another convincing story is described in detail in the *Eiga monogatari*, and confirmed by other reliable sources. In the year 1025 a new pavilion was constructed in the Sekidera temple of Ōmi. A black cow was used for transporting lumber. One day a man from the neighbourhood had a dream in which the cow appeared and declared that it was in fact an incarnation of Buddha Kasyapa (Kashō). This statement, when announced publicly, made quite a stir in the capital. Crowds of people (Michinaga and Yorimichi, among others) made pilgrimages to Ōmi in order to pay their respects to the cow. Some time afterwards the cow began to show symptoms of an illness. Then a monk in the capital had a dream. It was revealed to him that the time was coming for Kashō to enter Nirvana. And indeed, the cow died (of sheer exhaustion, one may suspect) on the day of consecration of the new pavilion126. The cow’s death in the popular opinion substantiated the monk’s revelation – Kashō had finished his business in this world and left for Nirvana.

The dreams recorded in diaries or described in literary fiction can be generally classed into two large categories, dreams concerning purely religious matters and dreams concerning secular matters of personal interest. It should be born in mind, however, that both categories, being treated as revelations from the other world, belong to the same general category of hierophanie. There is a very thin demarcation line between sacrum and profanum, between religious and secular matters and thus the division refers not to the substance of a dream, but to its, so to speak, ultimate purpose. In this meaning the dreams in which gods or Buddhas appeared may be treated as “secular” ones if their interpretation concerned only some profane matters. And conversely, dreams of purely mundane substance may be treated as religious ones if they led to illumination, like for example the dream described in the *Konjaku monogatari*, XIX, 8: a man who made his living as a falconer one night had a dream in which he himself had the form and emotions of a pheasant. There came hunters and the man‐pheasant suffered terribly looking at the death of his family and trying to escape death himself. After waking up he set all his dogs and falcons free, and became a monk. In that dream the substance was secular but its ultimate purpose was the spiritual awakening, the Buddhist illumination, and thus it may be regarded as a religious dream.

From the point of view of the subject matter, some of the dreams were self‐explanatory or obvious in their film‐like projection, while others were vague,

125 E.g.: *Nihon reiiki* 1975:II,9,15,32; *Konjaku monogatari* 1975:XX,21,22, and others.
distorted, and their meaning was hidden in symbols understandable only for specialists. The dreams of the first group belong mostly to literary fiction, although the Sarashina lady recorded some of her own dreams which look almost too orderly and film-like to be true. She clearly had a strong inclination for religious visions, especially in her more advanced years, but as a child she also had quite remarkable dreams. She remembered them all her life and drew her conclusions after many years. For instance after her husband’s death (in 1058) she was in a state of deep depression and tried to find some reason for her unhappiness. She remembered then her childhood dreams and wrote in her diary: “The dreams of the past in which I was advised to pray to the goddess Amaterasu a yumetoki interpreted for me. They meant that I should have become a wet-nurse (menoto) at the imperial court and live peacefully in the shadows of the Emperor and his Empress. I had not understood it then. (...) How very sad for me”\(^\text{127}\).

Quite often people felt that they could not understand the hidden message of their dreams. Lady Kagerō describing two of her dreams used the expression “I do not know if it is bad or good” (ashi yoshi mo eshirazu and ashi yoshi mo shiranedo) and she left it for her readers to draw the conclusions “Let the people who will know my fate decide if one should or should not believe in dreams and Buddhas” (kakuru mi o hate o mikikan hito, yume o mo hotoke o mo mochiirubeshi ya to sadameyo te nari)\(^\text{128}\).

Both ladies (Sarashina and Kagerō) were easily given to pessimistic forebodings and lamentations but they had no active will of resisting their ill luck. Quite unlike Michinaga, who was not only very sensitive to bad omens but who often tried to anticipate all possible events. After a bad dream (his own or somebody else’s but concerning him or his family) he called his favourite masters of divination and ordered them to explain the meaning of the dream, its ultimate purpose.

The ultimate purpose of any dream in the specialists’ interpretation could have two aspects: prophetic and advisory. In case of a prophecy expressed through a dream there was no other reaction possible save the passive waiting for its realization. For example, lady Kagerō waited for her own death after a bad dream (not reported) interpreted by a yumetoki\(^\text{129}\). In 1016, when Michinaga was ill for a long time, a monk called Shin’yo reported to Sanesuke a dream presaging Michinaga’s death in the next year\(^\text{130}\). In both cases the prophecies did not materialized. Generally speaking, there were very few realized prophecies in the diaries. It was only literary fiction that furnished many examples of dreams which came true.

---


\(^{128}\) Kagerō niki 1966:216.

\(^{129}\) Ibid., 283 and 288.

\(^{130}\) Shōyūki, the 8th day of the 5th moon.
The advisory aspect of dream interpretation could have been revealed in some constructive advice (e.g. to become a wet nurse) or in a preventive advice. This latter category seems to have been more frequent. Perhaps people were more sensitive to “bad dreams” (*ashiki yume, ashiki musō, akumu*). There are many instances of such notes in the diaries (*Midō kampaku ki, Shōyūki, Sarashina nikki, Kagerō nikki*) where it is written only “I had a bad dream” or something of a similar kind. We may assume that the dreams were interpreted as warnings from beyond because in most cases the person concerned stayed home afterwards and did not even accept letters, which was generally considered the proper procedure to avoid a bad influence. Sometimes the *yumetoki’s or ommyōji’s* advice was not limited to individual prayers and abstinence (*monoimi*). It could be more elaborate and demand costly prayers in shrines and temples or even the rites of exoneration (*gejo*) performed by specialists.

In the case of persons as prominent in society as Michinaga, their dreams could have far-reaching consequences. It happened many times that Michinaga did not attend some important court event and for two or three days following did not perform his official duties because the masters of divination recommended his staying at home. In 1004 a stately visit of the Empress Akiko to the family shrine at Ōharano was stopped because of a bad dream. As was written at the beginning of this chapter, people of the Heian period believed that the dreams were direct means of communication with the other world. People were mostly passive receivers of the signals from beyond, but sometimes they tried to cause receiving them, tried to force the invisible powers to send a message. Hence, the custom of “ordering” dreams. One instance illustrating the custom may be seen in the *Sarashina nikki*. When the authoress was a girl her mother ordered two bronze mirrors to be cast and offered them to the Hatsuse temple. She asked a monk for revelation in a dream concerning the daughter’s future. After three days the monk related his made-on-order dream. As another example may serve the incident of Korechika who prayed to the spirit of his father and asked him to send a dream to the Empress Akiko. The dream was to persuade Akiko that Korechika had been innocent of any offence against her.

A belief existed that gods sometimes also had their private wishes and brutally exercised their power through various forms of *tatari*; if people could not comprehend the signals the gods might send a direct message in a dream. It was so with Fujiwara Sukemasa, a renowned calligrapher, who on crossing the sea on his return voyage from Kyūshū to the capital was stopped by a storm near the shore of the Iyo province. No matter how the crew worked, the ship could not progress for some

---

131 *Midō kampaku ki*, the 22nd day of the 7th moon.
days. Sukemasa wondered about the reason and then somebody explained that it was some god’s tatari. At night Sukemasa had a dream. A noble man came to him and introduced himself as the god residing in Mishima. He explained that he had stopped Sukemasa’s ship because he had wanted to get a piece of calligraphy for his shrine. He had coerced many ordinary calligraphers to write for him but they drew so poorly that the god decided to take advantage of Sukemasa’s voyage.

Awaking after his dream Sukemasa noticed that the weather has cleared and his ship safely reached the shore. He performed ritual ablutions and painted the inscription so much desired by the god.\(^{134}\)

It is hard to judge how many times bad dreams served only as pretexts but most probably there were cases when people deceived others in order to avoid some undesirable meeting or some tedious work. The belief in dreams was strong enough for even pure fabrications to be sufficient for excusing one from undesirable social contacts. Quite probably there were also people who invented dreams in order to draw attention to themselves and to become interesting to other people – one story of this kind is described in the *Ise monogatari*, dan 63. Dreams and their interpretations formed an important part of spiritual life of the Heian society. They were not reserved for the aristocracy only. But, unfortunately, it is not clear if the methods of interpretation were different for various classes.

### 2.2. Omens

Various kinds of inexplicable events treated as omens (*zenchō, shirushi*) appear throughout Heian literature. In literary fiction they mostly have their sequence in some forms of a presage coming true. Omens mentioned in the diaries of the period are not so colourful and very often leave us in doubt how they were interpreted and whether the authors considered their presages fulfilled or not. In many cases we may only assume that an author came across something believed to have been an omen as unexplained penances are sometimes noted down or some dark forebodings hinted. Many such hints are scattered all over the diaries of both pessimistic ladies – Kagerō and Sarashina, whereas in the *Midō kampaku ki* a different approach is evident; Michinaga was never passively waiting for something to happen but tried to anticipate and be prepared for all possible events. Hence, whenever anything extraordinary came to his notice, he called masters of divination and ordered them to interpret the meaning of the incident. He was a very cautious man and for him even a cow entering his mansion was enough to order divination.

\[^{134}\text{Okagami 1967:86. The inscription may still be seen in the Ōyamazumi jinja on the island Ōmishima (Ehime ken, Ochi gun) in the center of the Inner Sea. In the shrine there is enshrined the god Ōyamazumi – the noble, old man of Sukemasa’s dream.}\]
1005 and 1010 he summoned *omnyōji* on precisely such occasions. It is not clear what the verdict was in the first case, but the cow was probably considered inauspicious because for the next two or three days Michinaga performed *monoimi*. In 1010 the matter was evidently more complicated. On the 24th day of the 8th moon Michinaga noted down that a cow entered his mansion and he ordered divination. The results were not good and it was necessary to perform the rites of exoneration (*gejo*). In the same entry it is written that on the 9th day there had been some strange happenings (not specified) in Tōnomine and Michinaga called Abe Yoshihira and Kamo Kōei for interpretation. The opinions of both learned masters differed. Just in case, Michinaga proclaimed two days *monoimi*. But the matter weighed on his mind for he returned to it on the 26th day again and once more expressed his annoyance at the masters’ difference of opinions.

At Tōnomine was the tomb and shrine of Fujiwara Kamatari, the ancestor of the clan. Because of that everything connected with the place was important for the Fujiwaras and especially for Michinaga who was the recognized head of the clan (*uji no chōja*). In 1004 the tomb also caused him some anxiety as it was reported that on the 23rd day of the 9th moon some strange sounds had been heard coming from it. Abe Seimei was summoned for interpretation. The result of divination is unknown, but probably Seimei did not treat the matter very seriously as there is nothing else about it in the diary.

The Fujiwara clan sponsored other shrines and temples. In the *Ōkagami* it is clearly stated that whenever “something out of ordinary” happened (*rei ni tagai ayashiki koto*) the priests of Kōfukuji, Tōnomine, Yoshida, Ōharano and Kasuga informed the court about the event, and then the Fujiwara *uji no chōja* ordered divining and, if necessary, distributed *monoimi no fuda*. And, indeed, there are in the *Midō kampaku ki* some entries confirming the statement. For example, in 1015, on the 2nd day of the 3rd moon Michinaga got a letter from the Kōfukuji temple informing him that in the Nan’endo pavilion two wild ducks had settled. Michinaga summoned Abe Yoshihira and Kamo Kōei (*Midō*). The results are unknown.

It seems that any act of extraordinary behaviour of animals or birds was apt to be interpreted as an omen. Many such instances may be found in diaries, but unluckily, it is rarely explained what the conclusions were. But, for example, Sanesuke describes that on the 1st day of the 8th moon of 1015 a great many herons gathered on the roof of his newly constructed residence. Feeling uneasy about it, he consulted Abe Yoshihira and was told that he should be very cautious as the herons presaged...
an illness\textsuperscript{139}. Lady Kagerō writes how people of her household were alarmed when on the day of ayame no sekku a lot of cuckoos appeared in front of the mansion. It was interpreted as a bad omen\textsuperscript{140}.

Another interesting omen and its interpretation are noted in Kōdanshō (scroll 2). When Akiko (Shōshi) served as a low rank concubine (nyōgo) of Ichijō tennō, one day a dog jumped in behind her curtains of state. Michinaga asked Oe Masahira whether the event had any special meaning. Masahira explained that it was a good omen presaging that Akiko would bear an heir to the throne. His interpretation was based on the graphic forms of the word “dog” (inu), the first component of the “crown prince” (taishi), and the first component of the “Emperor” (tennō). According to Masahira’s explanation, all three ideograms have three strokes identical and by moving the fourth stroke or dot one may form any of the three ideograms.

As has already been written, there was a special governmental office dealing with the interpretation of celestial and earthly portents. It was the Ommyōryō with its staff of trained specialists. The functionaries had to observe the colour of clouds, appearance of the sky, direction and volume of winds, and be on alert for all kinds of unusual phenomena. People reported to them many such things from all over the country and the masters drew their conclusions, like in the case of the white turtle from Bungo when the era name was changed in order to evoke good luck portended by the happy finding.

It seems that in most cases only the specialists could tell whether some strange event was an omen or not, and then only they could decide if it was good or bad. The Ōkagami, for example, describes an unusual event mistakenly interpreted by non-specialists. The Empress Akiko with her mother went for a pilgrimage to the Kasuga shrine and made offerings to the family gods. Then suddenly a strong gust of wind snatched the offerings and carried them some considerable distance and deposited at last in the Daibutsuden pavilion of the Tōdaiji temple. It was considered an inauspicious omen for the Fujiwaras because the Tōdaiji was a temple of the Minamoto clan. But it turned out to have been a good omen (kissō) after all, as the Fujiwaras prospered. The conclusion follows: people were often mistaken in their private interpretations\textsuperscript{141}.

There were also some events popularly established as bad omens. To this category belonged sneezing which was associated with a lie on the part of a speaker or with something vaguely inauspicious. Therefore, in order to avoid bad luck it was recommended to recite a spell after a sneeze. Much more sinister and feared by everybody was the appearance of a hitodama (“human soul”) – a will-o’-the-wisp

\textsuperscript{139} Shōyūki, the 2nd day of the 8th moon.
\textsuperscript{140} Kagerō nikki 1966:313.
\textsuperscript{141} Ōkagami 1967:275–6.
which appeared in the form of a whitish ball hovering in the air. It portended misfortune or even death to the person over whom it appeared. As the word *hitodama* indicates, it was also believed to be the soul leaving a body.

In 1012, when so many bad things happened to Michinaga, a *hitodama* was seen over his residence on the 10th day of the 4th moon, and again on the 8th day of the 6th moon, which made the atmosphere surrounding him still more oppressive and worsened his physical condition. He did not die then, but in 1027, when he was actually on his death bed, a *hitodama* was again seen on the 29th day of the 11th moon. He died four days later (Shōyūki), which was probably commented as the prediction of the *hitodama* coming true.

Another case of a fulfilled prediction is given in *Sarashina nikki*. In the 7th moon of 1057 the authoress’ husband was leaving for his new post in Shinano. When his retinue left the city a very big *hitodama* (*imijiku ōkinaru hitodama*) appeared. The lady hearing about it hoped against hope that it concerned somebody else. The husband returned home in the 4th moon of 1058 and in the 10th moon he died. The lady had not the smallest doubt that the *hitodama* had been a warning.

In the case of a prophetic dream only one person could serve as the “chosen vessel”, the addressee of the message from beyond. In the case of events considered to be omens usually more than one person could receive the message, as the events always happened independently of individual subjective control and individual will. People could not manage the appearance of omens. They were only very sensitive to all unusual phenomena in their natural surroundings and were always ready to suspect a hidden meaning in them. But it also happened that an omen was sent in a dream. Lady Sarashina went in 1046 for a pilgrimage to the Hatsuse temple (Hasedera) wherein she dreamt that somebody threw into her room a cedar twig from the Fushimi Inari shrine. There was at Fushimi a big cedar tree that was believed to have the ability of portending good, or bad fortune. It was called *shirushi no sugi* – “the cedar of omens”. People broke off a twig and took it home; if the twig withered soon it was considered a bad omen, but if for a long time it looked fresh – the omen was good. The lady of the *Sarashina nikki* ignored her dream and afterwards she regretted it deeply. After her husband’s death she came to believe that if she had taken the sign from Inari seriously and had visited the Fushimi shrine, her husband would not have died. We can see that the lady believed her dream of 1046 to be a sign from Inari sending her off on the next pilgrimage. But the *shirushi no sugi* in this case does not appear as an omen sensu stricto but rather as a symbol of the shrine.

---

142 *Shōyūki*, under the above given dates.
144 Ibid., 525.
145 Ibid., 532.
V. CONCLUSIONS

From our concise review of Japanese superstitions, magic and mantic practices in the Heian period it may be evident that there existed some ideas which were common for many people being on the same or similar stage of development, but also that Japan had its own genuine ideas, characteristic for that country only, on account of its natural background distinguishing it from other countries. Some of the peculiarities were closely connected with the geographical situation of the archipelago. The insular character of Japan has always formed a natural barrier for permanent foreign influences. In times when sailing was a hazardous business, all the contacts with the continent were sporadic and prevented Japan from a direct and constant radiation of continental culture. Even in the period of the most enthusiastic absorption of Buddhism and of Chinese fashions in many branches of public and private life, extensive regions were left in Japan almost untouched by all those novelties. The Buddhist religion and “things Chinesy” were sponsored and propagated by the Buddhist clergy, and by the court and aristocracy. Due to the strict class distinction playing a great role in the life of the Heian society, the process of assimilation of new doctrines outside the aristocracy was very slow. There was a chasm between the urban centres (Nara, Heian kyō) and the provinces. In the respective capital cities, too, there was no communication between the court aristocracy and the remaining part of the population. But a difference between the Nara and the Heian period should be noted; the character of the so-called “six Nara sects” of Buddhism was incomparably more hermetic and exclusive than the character of the leading schools of Heian (Shingon, Tendai), which were more elastic and eclectic in their approach and which prepared ground for the truly popular amidistic movement and for various syncretic schools with a strong appeal to all those who did not want to part with the old Shintoist divinities. But again, even these more acceptable forms of foreign religion had no chance to find a strong support among the inhabitants of remote provinces whose only point of contact with metropolitan culture took the shape of a tax collector. And the tax collectors were no evangelists.
In the metropolitan area (not only in the Heian kyō but also in the surrounding provinces) Buddhist monks of lower rank moved freely in all classes of the society and acted as intermediaries between the classes. Thanks to it, in that region the circulation of various ideas was more vigorous than in the other, more distant provinces. Between the capital and the rest of the country there were numerous natural obstacles discouraging people from undertaking travel.

Thus, the geographical conditions put brakes on permanent exchange of ideas in two spheres of human contact, between Japan and the continent, and between the metropolitan region and the rest of the country. The differences of life style within the urban societies were conditioned by the class distinctions.

There was another Japanese peculiarity connected with geography – a multitude and intensity of natural calamities. Typhoons, earthquakes, eruptions of volcanoes, tsunami waves have always been frequent in Japan. The frequency and intensity of such disasters had to leave its mark on the character of the much suffering inhabitants of the archipelago. Since the dawn of their history they have lived in perpetual fear of capricious elements. The ancient animistic beliefs ascribed the calamities not only to the activities of formless powers of nature but also to the displeasure of ancestors' spirits. The ancient Japanese revered but also feared their dead. It is amply evidenced by the burial customs prevailing up to the time of Buddhism. The dead were kept in a good mood by means of offerings, while their return to the world of the living was to be prevented by means of stones put on the corpses or by other heavy covers bounding them in their graves.

The fear of the dead, originating in ancestor worship, has survived up to the Heian period and has developed into the goryō shinkō. There were abundant reasons for perpetuance of the goryō faith, pestilence, drought, flood, and frequent fires in the capital. All these were explained as vengeful activities of one or another angry spirit. The spirits belonged to the category of public enemies because they wreaked their vengeance on big communities, sometimes even on a national scale. They may be said to constitute a personalized, modified projection of the older nameless fears coming to the surface of human cognition in cases of natural calamities. Thus the calamities formed a natural basis for the faith. But there was yet another matter, which had to be decided upon in case of a public disaster – it was the necessity of giving a name to the angry ghost causing the damage. The matter was settled by divination or oracles through dreams; the real sources of thus obtained understanding should be, however, sought in the uneasy conscience. All spirits recognised as goryō (called also onryō or mononoke) belonged to persons harmed publicly in their lifetime, mostly to famous exiles like prince Sawara, Sugawara Michizane, Ban no Yōshio, and others. They were all stripped of their ranks and banished, and on that account they suffered humiliation on a nationwide scale. For this they took revenge not on individuals but above all, on big communities. Moreover, they liked to haunt with a special cruelty these persons
who had been directly responsible for their misfortunes – the imperial family and other highest dignitaries of the court.

The Heian period, so peaceful on the surface, was not free from many dramatic conflicts. The most striking feature of Heian literature is its melancholy, its ever-pervading feeling of impermanence, an almost oppressive atmosphere of doom. It is, to a certain extent, obviously a reflection of Buddhist teaching with a particular emphasis on the mappō doctrine – that the world is about to enter an era of “the latter days of the Law” when all human virtues must collapse and disappear. But the doctrine itself would not have had the power to influence people’s way of thinking if there were no social conditions making it acceptable. And these were plentiful, at least for the writers who belonged to the aristocracy – a very narrow but over-important and rigidly stratified class.

The rivalry among various Fujiwara branches in the formative decades of the Heian period resulted in the creation of the sekkan seiji type of rule. In that system the Emperors were practically shorn of any real power and the supreme authority shifted to the most prominent representatives of the Hokke branch of Fujiwara. Members of that family could reach the heights of prosperity thanks to the marriage policy, for since the second half of the 9th century it has become customary to appoint the maternal grandfathers of the Crown Prince or of the reigning Emperor to the offices of sesshō and kampaku, and they were invariably Fujiwaras of the Hokke branch. It was a very prolific family and there were always many competitors fighting among themselves with the sole purpose to gain as much as possible. While the country was in the direst need of economic reforms, all reforms were forgotten in the heat of family struggles at the highest level of official hierarchy. The imperial house was overgrown with the Fujiwara ladies, who were consorts, concubines, mothers and grandmothers of the Emperors. Their fathers, brothers and cousins sought their favours and protection at the court for perpetuating the glory of the Fujiwaras. Their interests came to be identified with the interests of the imperial family. The government looked more and more like a cosy family business. But because of the great number of the competitors not everything went smoothly for particular members of the much-favoured family. It was a constant struggle, and where there is a struggle there are victors on the one hand, and victims on the other.

With the Emperors stripped of their power, with the Fujiwara regents, great ministers and councilors absorbed in making feathered nests for their families, the administrative machinery worked mostly by its own impetus and thanks to the army of nameless petty clerks performing their duties independently of intrigues at the highest level. But here, too, the struggle was going on. There were always more candidates to every post than the posts themselves. When the time of new appointments was approaching there were crowds of supplicants besieging residences

---

146 The rule by regents (sesshō) and chancellors (kampaku).
of powerful officials, slandering rivals and extolling their own virtues. Especially fierce battles were fought over the posts of provincial governors and the posts in the metropolitan police. Intrigue, bribery and slander were the most often used weapons. Here, too, victors and embittered victims left the battlefield.

Many people reduced to poverty lived in the capital. Probably they tried desperately to find means of survival, and when they exhausted all honest methods they had to turn to dishonest ones. Possibly the capital also became a favourite hiding-place for criminals from the country. In any case, in the chronicles and diaries of the period there are many notes concerning robbery, burglary and murder in the city. The roads leading to the capital were also very unsafe, to say the least. The atmosphere in the Heian kyō was so oppressive that there were many who escaped from it and sought peace in the mountain retreats.

It is one of the typical features of the Heian period that many important Buddhist monasteries were built in the mountains, while in the Nara period the main edifices of the “six sects” had been situated in the city itself. Certainly, big temples were also built in the Heian kyō, but the most important ones – Enryakuji of the Tendai sect and Kongōbuji of the Shingon sect (and their subordinate temples) – were flourishing in the mountains. They grew in strength, with their prelates who had growing ambitions in purely mundane matters, and they also constituted a growing economic and military power that sometimes threatened the civilian authority. Raids of militant monks from Mount Hiei added to the atmosphere of disquiet permeating the capital.

Many monks were greedy and corrupted and by their behaviour added strength to the mappō ideas. Their indecent conduct led to spreading the belief in tengu, especially in tengu impersonating monks. But on the other hand, there were numerous persons who abandoned all worldly hopes and desires, and lived quietly in the mountains in small chapels or hermitages. In such retreats many disappointed courtiers found consolation, as well as disillusioned and impoverished ladies of good birth, orphaned girls and other people who could not find other means for honest living because they had no powerful protectors in the capital and were the victims in the competitions.

These and other conditions formed the social background of the life in the capital and contributed to the feeling of pessimistic forebodings so strongly pronounced in Heian literature. And all of them created a fertile ground for various superstitions.

The most commonly met superstitious fear (side by side with goryō and tengu) was that of a mononoke. As it has already been written, most of personal misfortunes like illness, madness, sudden death, fire in the house, etc., were ascribed to the activity of a mononoke. Similarly to the manifestations of public enemies of the goryō kind, in the case of a private enemy of the mononoke kind two elements were necessary: its appearance as the objective factor, and giving a name to the dark
power as the subjective factor. Without the objective factor in the form of a misfortune there was no mononoke. But once something had happened to somebody, soon people began to guess and look into the past of the stricken person. With Emperors, Empresses, great ministers, and other dignitaries it was not too difficult to find more than one mononoke to haunt them. The imperial court was a stage of the most ruthless struggles, and many a victim turned after death into an avenging spirit directing its fury at the former victors. The higher one stood in the hierarchy, the more exposed one became to the mononoke activities; which does not mean that parallel to one’s advancement in hierarchy rose the proneness to ailments or other misfortunes. It means only that powerful people had more chances to harm or to be suspected of harming others, and thus it was easy to give definite names to the mononoke that tormented them. Moreover, it is possible that there existed something like a “mononoke psychosis” similar to the kitsune tsuki of the 19th century in Shimane. Cases of neurotic conditions could have originated in frustration, bad conscience and fear of a particular spirit. Autosuggestion could have played a great role like, for example, in the case of Michinaga whose condition worsened on receiving information that somebody had wanted to hurt him by magic. Insignificant persons, who had not hurt anybody, were haunted only by nameless mononoke or simply had a cold.

The most famous mononoke of the Heian period were recruited from amongst gentlemen who had failed in their official careers, and from amongst ladies who had been defeated by rivals in their efforts to win the imperial favour. As the most classical examples may be reminded here two “father-daughter” teams, namely: Motokata - Motoko, and Akimitsu - Nobuko.

In the imperial family not uncommon were mental aberrations, ascribed, in the fashion of the day, to the mononoke activities. Yōzei, En'yū, and Kazan were not, mildly speaking, quite normal. Suzaku and Sanjō from early childhood showed signs of some serious illness. They all could have been victims of the marriage system enforced by the Fujiwara dictators. Since the sekkan seiji type of rule came into operation (and even earlier) it became customary to choose Crown Princes from amongst the imperial offspring born to the Fujiwara ladies, and it was not considered unusual if a Crown Prince or an Emperor was married to his own aunt. The system of marriages within the family had to produce many sickly, physically or/and mentally weak individuals.

Besides, the primitive level of sanitary conditions and prohibitive rules concerning personal hygiene imposed by the Ommyōryō formed a good background for external infections, and for spreading contagious diseases. According to the calendars prepared by ommyōji, one could take a bath not more frequently than once in five days, and even that was often not possible if various bad days, inauspicious omens or unlucky directions interfered. One may imagine what effects these prohibitions produced during the extremely hot and humid Japanese summer. No
wonder that the art of preparing perfumes and incense was so amazingly developed in the Heian period.

The abscesses of the Empress Akiko could have possibly been more easily cured if her personal hygiene had been better. But they were finally ascribed to the wrath of Sumifuri and Hayabusa and, obviously, for the gods it was a matter of no importance if the Empress washed herself or not.

One may suppose that the sanitary conditions were still worse outside the palace and aristocratic mansions. And medical science did not help matters greatly as it was based on metaphysical theories in diagnostics and on curative spells in treatment. The possession by a *mononoke* was one of the most often met causes of illness.

The poverty of lower classes on the one hand and the inefficiency of the metropolitan police on the other probably reinforced to a great extent the belief in demons. In the diaries of the period there are many mentions of theft and burglary in particular mansions, and even in the sacrosanct precincts of the palace. Murasaki Shikibu describes one of the most drastic cases – two sleeping ladies were robbed completely of their costumes in a chamber near to the Empress’ bedroom. It was such a bizarre and preposterous event that it could have been misconstrued later and formed a background for a demon-thief story. In the *Konjaku monogatari* many tales may be found in which some ordinary thefts are ascribed to demons activities (e.g. XXVII, 10, 12, and others). Whenever the police could not find the real culprits it was possible to solve the mystery by attributing the foul deed to some supernatural power.

A similar situation was with the tales of killer demons and cannibal demons. There is a lot of solid evidence in the diaries to account for many gruesome details in literary fiction. For example, the hairy head with blood found in the Daigokuden on the day of Ichijō tennō’s enthronement ceremony could have been a distorted literary version of the authentic head found in the palace garden in 1015. It should be noted that the versions of Michinaga and of Sanesuke were already different one day after the discovery. Therefore, it does not seem improbable that later versions were more and more distant from the original fact and, at last, by the time of writing the *Ōkagami* only the head itself lingered in people’s memory. The place and the time were changed, and the supernatural element was added. Also the pitiful remains of a baby found about two weeks later in the Empress Dowager’s quarters were most certainly impressive enough to be talked about for a long time, and to form a thread of some later bizarre story. In the *Konjaku monogatari* there are several tales in which only a head, or only a finger, or legs and arms were left of a person devoured by demons.

---

147 *Murasaki Shikibu Nikki* 1958:484.
148 ‘The *Okagami* was written a few scores of years after Ichijō’s enthronement and of finding the head in the palace grounds.’
As it has never been explained to whom those dismembered bodies polluting the palace grounds belonged, one may only guess what had caused their appearance there. In the first case it had to be a murder with the malice afterthought, because severing the head was a dirty and not easy job. The act required patience and determination. The murderer was possibly a mentally unbalanced man or a very spiteful one for he brought the head from somewhere (the headless body being never found) and put it in such a place where it had to make a lot of embarrassment.

In the second case one may imagine that it could have been infanticide. Perhaps one of the maids had decided that she was unable to keep her baby and thus she killed it. It resembles the *Konjaku monogatari* story of the demon in the mountain shack. The mutilation of the body could have been caused by dogs. In the *Shōyūki* there is an entry describing a dog which paraded all over the palace grounds with a human hand in its mouth. But in case of the child it might not necessarily have been a crime. An accident is not impossible, too. But what a topic for conversation among the palace ladies!

Anyway, such incidents were probably more frequent in the city itself, and not being pursued by the police as crimes, they were distorted and exaggerated by gossip until, finally, they assumed the proportions of supernatural occurrences. It was so, for example, with the famous demon of Rashōmon. “In the year 974 several people in the capital have disappeared mysteriously. This is attributed to the maleficent powers of a ghost who has been haunting the region of the Rashō Gate at the southern extremity of the city.”149

Mysterious disappearances were not always caused by criminal activities. One may suppose that the amorous exploits of the aristocratic gallants could have sometimes been misconstrued as demons’ deeds. There were instances of abducting ladies and hiding them at some unfrequented place. Such an adventure Izumi Shikibu had with prince Atsumichi, and also lady Kagerō with her own official husband Kaneie. Similar, but more dramatic illustration may be seen in that realistic novel, *Genji monogatari*. Young Genji abducted Yūgao and she died in the desolated cottage. Her body was taken surreptitiously to a mountain chapel and after the proper rites, buried secretly. Later on, Genji kidnapped the girl Murasaki from her father’s house and for a long time nobody except Genji and his servants knew what had happened to her. Here may be also reminded the *Ise monogatari* tale in which the young man eloped with Takaiko and she disappeared from the shack where they were waiting till the thunder stopped. In the *Ise monogatari* story the ending is a rational one, but the later versions proclaimed that the lady was devoured by demons.

It should be emphasized once again that in the diaries of the period there are no demons actually seen by the authors. Except that one demon at the Empress

---

Sadako’s court there are no demons at all. But there are many kinds of invisible malicious spirits demonstrating their power by means of possession and illness. They were sometime heard weeping or groaning through the mouth of a yorimashi (Makura no sōshi, Murasaki Shikibu nikki, and others).

One may suppose that such seances with yorimashi had to be very impressive for spectators. The hypnotic or auto hypnotic trances were explained in terms of a supernatural being having entered the body of the medium. There was no other explanation acceptable for such an unladylike behaviour of girls as that described by Sei Shōnagon.

Nevertheless, it should be remembered that everyday life was not overburdened with the presence of supernatural beings. Goryō and mononoke appeared only in extraordinary circumstances, while devils and other visible demons, although believed in, clearly belonged to literary fiction. Into the latter category we may include tengu and tennin, although there is some evidence pointing to a different approach in regard to both groups. The belief in tengu had its factual support in misbehaviour of monks and, subsequently, it found the way to the chronicles of the period (the story of the Sonedono Empress may be recalled here). But there was no actual basis for the belief in heavenly maidens and thus they existed in literary fiction of fairytale type only.

Among the animals endowed with a supernatural power only foxes played some role in the superstitions of the capital aristocracy. But they were probably more feared by the lower classes and in the countryside, as many more foxes appear in folk-tales than in the diaries.

Besides, there were people of a superstitious turn of mind and others who were not so susceptible. For example, in the Genji monogatari there are many long chapters without anything that we would be inclined to call a superstition. The diary of Izumi Shikibu is conspicuous by the absence of any supernatural occurrences. It is so striking that one may even consider it an argument in the discussion on the authenticity of the Izumi Shikibu nikki as a diary. In the text, kataimi are only mentioned twice, monoimi of the prince twice, and also twice the religious austerities of the prince and the lady herself. Apart from those, there are no dreams, no divination, no mononoke, and no charms. The story is clearly focused on the romantic aspects only and nothing else. Even if it were a diary written in retrospect, it would still point to the authoress’ insusceptibility to superstition. The diaries of lady Kagerō and of the Sarashina lady were written in retrospect and, nevertheless, they show many incidents closely connected with the current superstitions.

It seems that various superstitions of the Ommyōdō type have found a much stronger basis in Japanese mentality than imported superstitions connected with

---

150 This argument was not used by Cranston in his summary of the discussion which has been going on for over 50 years; cf. Cranston 1969:44–90.
devils and other visible demons. As it has been mentioned several times, after the period of *Reiiki* the *ommyōji* were gradually gaining a predominant position as occult advisers. There is not a single document without entries concerning *kataimi* and *katatagae*. But it should be kept in mind that the documents describe almost exclusively the life of the aristocracy. And the *ommyōji* influence was strong in that class only. It is hard to imagine a peasant abandoning his field for 45 days because he believed that Tokujin had chosen its abode there, or a fisherman not going to the seashore because of a directional taboo. All the irrational fears of the working classes were developing together with the classes and their particular crafts and could not have stood in opposition to them, could not put brakes on the labours which secured their existence.

The unproductive class, i.e., the aristocracy, was not confronted with these kinds of obstacles. Quite to the contrary, the directional taboos formed sometimes a gratifying diversion. For aristocratic ladies closed in the eternal twilight of their houses a change of the house was a rare opportunity to see other places and meet other people. For gentlemen, a *kataimi* very often formed an excellent excuse to avoid undesirable tasks. And it was a matter of small consequence whether an official went to his office or not. The best illustration of the tempo in the official life may provide the following fragment of the *Kagerō Nikki*: Kaneie, freshly appointed to the post of vice-minister in the Ministry of War, leisurely spends many days in the mansion of lady Kagerō and there he receives a letter from his superior, the minister, with a mild question, why does he not show himself in the office. The letter is in the form of a poem, and Kaneie answers in the same manner. For the next few days both gentlemen are engaged in sending witty poems to each other without further allusions to the work in the Ministry151.

The easy acceptance by the aristocracy of the Ommyōdō type of various superstitions (inauspicious days and years, directional taboos, astrology, etc.) may be explained by the existence of four loosely connected but necessary conditions: 1. the easygoing, prosperous life of the upper strata of society; 2. the well-known Japanese weakness for imported ideas, the snobbish value of the then “things Chinese”; 3. the hermetic character of aristocratic society facilitating the flow of information within the class; 4. certain similarities of the popularly accepted *ommyō* ideas to the old native beliefs.

The last point demands a few words of elucidation because looking on the surface only it is not easy to see the similarities between the old animistic beliefs and the neat, symmetric system of calendrical calculations. But it should be noted that the calendrical calculations themselves were beyond the grasp of non-specialists, they were left exclusively to learned masters. And the masters, not showing their cards but enshrouded in the glory of high learning, imbued people with irra-

151 *Kagerō Nikki* 1966:134.
tional fear of invisible powers; invisible and closely related to the unending rhythm of nature. Since remote antiquity the Japanese have been extremely sensitive to all natural phenomena. In the earliest chronicles, they scrupulously noted the seasons, in their poetry and literary prose they have responded to seasonal changes with surprising intensity in their moods and verbal expressions. They have always been aware of the majestic beauty of their landscape, but at the same time they have lived in fear of all those invisible, shapeless powers that were able at any moment to endanger their world by sending down an earthquake or a typhoon. The Japanese have stood in awe of numberless and nameless spirits governing winds, rain, thunder, rivers, trees etc., and all other natural phenomena. The fear of all those awesome spirits has become an integral part of the Japanese mentality.

The ommyōji utilised this strong, inborn inclination. The ommyōji themselves, nota bene, were Japanese enough to have this kind of predilections, too, even if they gave foreign names to the powers of nature which they evoked. They also incorporated into their system such old, native ideas as ritual purification (harae) and abstinence (monoimi) which undoubtedly helped to make the system still more acceptable in the popular mind. And the superiority of the system over the old straightforward Shintoist beliefs lay in its “scientific”, systematized character which strongly appealed to the aristocratic snobbery. Some individuals liked to turn their backs on Shintō (e.g. Murasaki Shikibu, or Sei Shōnagon) but, nevertheless, the Shintoist ceremonies constituted an inseparable part of the official court life, and the nenjū gyōji of purely Shintoist character were the most important in the court calendar (e.g. chōga, daijōe, ōharae, etc.). They belonged to the oldest tradition and coexisted peacefully with the ceremonies of Buddhist or Ommyōdō kinds.

Among the nenjū gyōji, some had purely religious character (e.g. Aoi matsuri, kambutsue, etc.), others magic (e.g. nanasebarai, tsuina, etc.) while still others had neither religious nor magic connotations (like, for example, koromogae – the seasonal change of costumes performed on the 1st days of the 4th and the 10th moon). The big number of ceremonies belonging to the second group points to the importance of magic on the highest level of society, but at the same time several of the ceremonies show clearly a devaluation of magic elements. Such festivals as aouma no sechie, gokusui no en152, shōbu no koshi, etc., have already in the middle Heian period lost much of their primary meaning and have become more ornamental and aesthetic than magical in their character. Besides, it should be always remembered that their range of influence was not very wide as they were performed at the court or in shrines and temples sponsored by the court, and were imitated privately in aristocratic mansions. They belonged to the institutionalized magic. Within this category,

152 It should be brought up here, that the gokusui no en was an imitation of a Chinese festival, and when it was transmitted to Japan, it had already lost its primary meaning in the country of its origin.
a gradual growth of the ommyōji predominance over the native ritualists was evident, and side-by-side with it, that of the Buddhist clergy belonging to the mikkyō sects. Nevertheless, the most important among the Shintoist ceremonies like ōharae or daijōe have not disappeared and have not lost their vitality.

The institutionalized syncretic magic is very well documented in Heian literature, but it concerns only the official part of social life. The materials on privately employed magic among the upper classes are sufficient enough to repeat the same conclusion as that on the institutionalized magic. After the period of Reiiki a steadily growing influence of ommyōji and Buddhist monks who performed magic rites for their private rich patrons is evident. And the demand for their services was big enough to cause some important transmutations inside their ranks. For ommyōji there was no need to pursue their purely scientific vocations, and consequently astronomy was gradually losing all its scientific meaning, turning more and more firmly into astrology. Similarly, medicine, instead of being developed, was transformed into quackery, while calendar-making was utilized for magic and divination. The patrons of ommyōji were not interested in science, and without a proper stimulus the ommyōji did not lose their time and energy on such impractical considerations. The occult art was much more profitable, and they devoted all their efforts to it, especially as they had to strive hard not to be pushed aside by competitors from outside their ranks.

The strongest competitors were recruited from amongst the Buddhist monks who practised the so-called orthodox magic based on the kaji kito incantations. Their authority was very great and it also had been growing steadily since the period of activity of the eminent reformers, Saichō and Kūkai. Within the scope of the orthodox magic were rites performed for various purposes – from secret ones for spiritual salvation, through rites for public safety, up to variegated services for individuals. The first group of rites belonged to religion and did not play any big role in everyday life of the secular part of the society. The second category was partly institutionalized in the form of annual ceremonies, and partly appeared in case of national calamities like drought, famine or pestilence, and was then ordered by the government. The most popular category included all kinds of rites performed for private customers, and as the demand for such services was growing the number of practitioners and the variety of methods were increasing, too.

In the struggle with the secular competitors doctrinal purity was easily forgotten by many monks, and syncretic forms of magic were gaining ground. As it was pointed out in the chapter on “human agents”, the government sometimes tried to curtail the unorthodox activity of the Buddhist clergy, but after the period of Saichō’s reformist movement the Buddhist church itself gradually lost interest in evangelism and its prelates became more and more immersed in worldly matters. Thus ensuing laxity in enforcing the mother church by some monks and turning to a profitable business of sorcery. Such monks did not scoff at unorthodox magic and were not too proud to utilize the ommyō or shamanic methods.
In the *Konjaku monogatari* “holy men” are described many times, who turned out to have been *tengu* or other impersonators or hermits who practised magic but “were ignorant of the Law”. They were probably literary transfigurations of real practitioners belonging to that syncretic ecclesiastic group. And for the general public it was of no consequence whether a “mighty person” (*genza*) evoked a Buddha or a *shikigami*. The monkish garb was a sufficient recommendation for people to believe in the spiritual power of its wearer.

To the popularly employed forms of private magic belonged all preventive magic practices (e.g. *uchimaki*, avoiding evil spirits, etc.) and evocative ones (e.g. *hagatame*, preparing the *kusudama*, etc.) which were aimed at prolonging one’s life, ensuring health and prosperity. The specialists were called most often in the case of an illness or an appearance of some other evil influence. To the destructive magic people turned mostly when they could not cope with a situation in any other way. It was not often and it also depended on the personal inclinations of an individual. Noble ladies could turn into witches if their jealousy was raised, if they found themselves defeated by their rivals. Promising courtiers could also feel embittered if their names did not appear on the list of fresh nominations and could then curse rivals or officials whom they thought responsible for their humiliation. But such instances did not belong to everyday life, they were results of uncontrollable human passions not easily aroused and, above all, not openly revealed. Casting a curse on another human being was considered a grave offence against the society and was met with public condemnation. The “crime of making objects for witchcraft” (*majimono wo seru tsumi*)\(^{153}\) is listed in the *norito* recited during the ceremony of *ōharae*. It means that the abhorrence of witchcraft had had a long tradition in the Heian period and still remained a vital force. The regular and extraordinary *zuso no harae*\(^{154}\) give evidence to the fear of courses to be an important factor in the spiritual make-up of the people.

Some acts of destructive magic, however, had the popular approval like, for example, in the case of Masakado’s rebellion who, it may be brought up again here, was bound with a spell and killed\(^{155}\). Masakado was a public enemy and thus it was profitable for the society to destroy him. In his case the social considerations overbalanced the usual Buddhist aversion to taking life (it was believed that his death was caused by prayers and magic rites performed in Buddhist temples by Buddhist monks). Bounding one’s enemy with a spell in self-defense was also considered proper within the moral code even if it was harmful for another person\(^{156}\). People bound with spells do not appear in diaries, they belong to the literary fiction. The

\(^{153}\) *Tsumi* may be translated variously, depending on the context, as “sin”, “offence”, “crime”, “impurity”. The above quoted phrase in Philippi’s translation is given as “the sin of witchcraft”; Philippi 1959:47.

\(^{154}\) Cf. p. 4.

\(^{155}\) See p. 34.

\(^{156}\) Cf. *Nihon reiiki* 1975:I,15; III,14, and others.
Reiiki stories were, of course, mostly pious fabrications intended for educational purposes, but the author could not overstep the limits of popular comprehension if he wanted to make his point. Literary fiction in general reflects the current ideas even if there is room left for fantasy and the readers were aware of it. For example in the Taketori monogatari Mount Hōrai forms a necessary element of the narration of the fairy tale type, while in the realistic novel, the Genji monogatari, the same mount is mentioned as a figment of imagination. Literature of the rekishi monogatari type is more reliable in regard to the current beliefs because it was intended to pass for history and as such could not be offensive to the readers’ credulity. The most reliable are, certainly, diaries, and there are not many examples of the destructive magic, and not in all of them. A few examples may be found in the Midō kampaku ki and Kagerō nikki only.

The Midō kampaku ki is remarkable in another respect – it shows how big a role in the official as well as in private life was played by all kinds of divination and omens. There are many entries concerning regular and extraordinary casting of horoscopes for the official purposes or privately for the Emperor, the Empress and other personages including Michinaga himself. In other diaries mantic practices are not so much in evidence but, as has already been mentioned, they were quite popular. Curiosity, uneasiness, the feeling of insecurity were the incentives pushing people to seek advice of professional dream-interpreters, physiognomists or astrologers. The belief in all kinds of oracles is best attested by the existence of two governmental offices – the Ommyōryō and the Jingikan with its urabe functionaries. But, judging by the contemporary sources, the influence of ommyōji as diviners was steadily increasing while the urabe suffered an eclipse. The kame no ura method which was a speciality of the urabe was still employed in the Heian period but later on it had disappeared, while almost all other kinds of divination have survived up to the present times.

It could be said that in the Heian period, thanks to the continental influence, the inner life of the Japanese became richer. The Buddhist imagery and many Chinese ideas penetrated into the people’s mentality and helped to create new layers of spiritual life. The primitive Japanese of the pre-Buddhist times had no ideas of hell or paradise as punishment or the reward for one’s deeds. The world was inhabited by myriads of spirits, good or bad, who constantly – visibly or invisibly – mixed with the living and exerted their influence on the lives of individuals and even of the nation as a whole. Under the impact of continental notions, the tangled mass of shapeless spirits began to be systematized and classified. Good spirits became benevolent divinities while bad ones assumed the shapes of various devils and demons. At the same time the methods of controlling the spirits became improved and fortified by the spells and incantations of Buddhist or ommyō origin, and new

---

157 Cf. p. 56 (part I).
ways of communication between this world and the other one were opened by utilizing imported mantic practices. Nevertheless, it should be noticed that even with their wholehearted enthusiasm for foreign ideas and technology the Japanese have never completely lost their oldest, native conceptions deeply rooted in the Shintō beliefs.
Bibliography:

Primary Sources

映画物語 1964。東京:岩波書店。

源氏物語 1974–1975。東京:岩波書店。

今昔物語集 1975。東京:岩波書店。

枕草子・紫式部日記 1958。東京:岩波書店。

日本霊異記 1975。東京:岩波書店。

大鏡 1967。東京:岩波書店。

Selected Secondary Sources


Ema, Tsutomu 1976. _Nihon yōkai, henge shi_ [Japanese monsters, a history of transformations]. Tōkyō: Chūkō bunko
江馬務 1976。日本妖怪変化史。東京:中公文庫。


Hearn, Lafcadio 1960. _Japan, an Attempt at Interpretation_. Tōkyō.
平安朝文学辞典 1972。東京:東京道。

池田彌三郎 1974。日本の幽霊。東京:中公文庫。

Kotański, Wiesław 1963. Zarys dziejów religii w Japonii [a history of religion in Japan]. 
Warszawa. 


Moszyński, Kazimierz 1934. Kultura ludowa Słowian [Slavic folk culture] część II, 
zeszyt 1. Kraków.


Noguchi, Kiyoshi 1961. Kitsune, Japan’s Fox of Mystery, Romance and Humor. 
Tōkyō.


Yamakami, Izumo 1975. Miko no rekishi [a history of shrine maidens]. Tōkyō: 
Yūzankaku. 
山上伊豆毋 1975。巫女の歴史。東京:雄山閣。
Prof. Jolanta Tubielewicz (1931–2003)

We present a reprint of the second part of a book by professor Jolanta Tubielewicz (1931–2003), entitled Superstition, Magic and Mantic Practices in the Heian Period, which constituted her habilitation (postdoctoral dissertation) defended in 1978. This book was published in English by Warsaw University Press in 1977, though its print-run was small and it is unknown among scholars of Japan abroad.

Professor Tubielewicz was an eminent scholar of Japanese studies and one of the founders of the postwar Warsaw school of Japanese studies. She was awarded the Order of the Rising Sun – Gold Rays with Neck Ribbon by the Emperor of Japan in recognition of her outstanding services in the field of promoting knowledge about Japan in Poland and academic cooperation between Poland and Japan.


Ewa Pałasz-Rutkowska
Notes About the Authors

Watanabe Hideo

Graduate of the Faculty of Education, Waseda University, Tokyo. In 1977 he obtained his PhD in Japanese literature from the Faculty of Japanese Studies, Waseda University. Currently he is holding the post of dean of the Faculty of Literature and Arts at Shinshū University, Matsumoto. His specialties are classical Japanese literature, Japanese culture and Chinese literature. He is the author of numerous academic publications that include among others: Kokinshūjo no bungakushi, wakachokusen to reigaku (Introduction to Kokinwakashū in the history of literature – imperial anthologies and the Book of Rites, Kazama Shobō 2004), Heian jidai no shidai ni kansuru kisoteki kenkyū (Basic research in poetry of the Heian period, Shikahan 2003), Shika no mori, Nihongo no imēji (The forest of words, the imagery of the Japanese language, Taishūkan Shoten 1995), Heianchō bungaku to kan bun sekai (Heian period court literature and the world of Chinese literature, Benseisha, 1991).

Małgorzata Karolina Citko

Graduated summa cum laude from Japanese Studies at Warsaw University and International Relations at Collegium Civitas, Poland. Currently a Ph.D. candidate in Japanese literature in the Department of East Asian Languages and Literatures at the University of Hawai‘i at Mānoa, United States of America. Her academic interests range from medieval Japanese poetry, reception and appropriation of the Man’yōshū (Collection of Ten Thousand Leaves, or, for Ten Thousand Generations, ca. 759–785) in the medieval era through Japanese foreign policy and Japanese social movements. She has been a grantee of among others Japanese Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology (MEXT), Polish-U.S. Fulbright Foundation, Japan Foundation and Center for Japanese Studies at the University of Hawai‘i at Mānoa.

mcitko@hawaii.edu
**Agnieszka Żuławska-Umeda**

Born in Warsaw in 1950, studied Japanese language and literature at Warsaw University (1968–1973). Currently she is an assistant professor in Japanese Literature at Warsaw University, also has lectures on Japanese Modern Literature at Polish-Japanese Higher Computer Technology School of Warsaw and at Warsaw School of Haiku.


agzu2007@gmail.com

**Keiichirō Hirano**

Born June 22, 1975, a Japanese novelist. He was born in Gamagori, Aichi prefecture, Japan. He published his first novel Nisshoku (Eclipse of the Sun) in 1998 and won the Akutagawa Prize the next year as one of the youngest winners ever (at 23 years of age). He graduated from the Law Department of Kyoto University in 1999. In 2005 he was nominated as a cultural ambassador and spent a year in France.
LIST OF REVIEWERS
(in alphabetical order)

Prof. Romuald Hruszcza, Jagiellonian University in Kraków
Prof. Beata Kubiak Ho-Chi, University of Warsaw
Prof. Ewa Pałasz-Rutkowska, University of Warsaw
Dr Senri Sonoyama, Jagiellonian University in Kraków
Dr Anna Zalewska, University of Warsaw
Prof. Estera Żeromska, Adam Mickiewicz University in Poznań
Information for Authors

Call for articles – “Analecta Nipponica”. Journal of Polish Association for Japanese Studies (accepted articles in English and in Japanese)

Notes to Contributors

Analecta Nipponica. Journal of Polish Association for Japanese Studies (Editor-in-Chief: Alfred F. Majewicz) is the peer-reviewed journal of the Polish Association for Japanese Studies (PAJS) covering all aspects, issues, and subjects, from all disciplines on, and related to, Japan, and consists of articles presenting results of original research as well as surveys of research, especially critical, in specific areas, publication reviews, biographical and bibliographical notes, reports on important academic meetings and other events. The language of the journal is English (American or British, but please, be sure of the consistency of the selected orthography) and Japanese. Abstracts in Japanese are required for articles in English, and abstracts in English are required for articles in Japanese; key words are requested in both English and Japanese.

All items, except for proper names, provided in languages other than English, should be in italics and, in the case of Japanese, Chinese, Korean, etc., also in the original orthography. The transliteration of Japanese, Chinese, Korean, etc., material must be standard (i.e., Hepburn for Japanese, pinyin for Chinese, Cune-Reischauer for Korean, etc.), unless in quotations.

Please note that priority of acceptance is given to PAJS members. Materials submitted cannot be either previously published or currently under consideration for publication elsewhere. The volume of material is, in principle, not limited but it should not exceed reasonable number of pages. Decision of acceptance belongs to the Editorial Board and, ultimately, to the Editor of the journal.
The material should be submitted electronically to:

**psbj.orient@uw.edu.pl** – in the form allowing editorial intervention in the text.

The type should be Times New Roman 12 pts., single spaced, on one page only in the typescript version. Footnotes, consecutively numbered throughout the material, should be typed in Times New Roman 10 pts.; no endnotes accepted. (For Japanese – MS Mincho).

**Technical information:**

Text files: doc. rtf (Microsoft Word)
Photos, graphic files: tif, bmp, eps, psd, cdr;

**References and source documentation** should be provided preferably in the text in the sequence Author year:page(s) in the following way (e.g.):

- Tamura (2003: 74) expressed opinion that...,
- Tamura wrote: “…” (2003: 74), in Tamura’s words; “…” (2003: 74),
- Some authors (e.g. Murata 1999, Tamura 2003, Murasaki 2008) are of the opinion that...;
- in the case of more authors of one publication referred to, the sequence First Author et al. year:page(s) is, in principle, expected, cf. e.g.:
  - Murasaki et al. 2007; Murasaki et al. (2007: 135–41),
  - but in justified cases up to three names can appear in such a reference, cf. e.g.:

**References with the same authorship and the same date should be** differentiated with Roman characters <a>, <b>, <c>, etc, cf. e.g.:

- Given name initial(s) are provided only when references are made to more than one author with the same family name, cf. e.g.:

References and source documentation must unambiguously correspond to respective items in the bibliography which in turn must be complete and as informative as possible, reflect the title page of the work cited or referred to, and be arranged alphabetically and chronologically in the following way (e.g.):

- Murasaki 2008
- Murasaki & Murata 1999
- Murasaki & Murata & Tamura 2004
- Tamura 2003
Tamura 2005
Tamura 2005a
Tamura 2005b
and, naturally,
Murasaki K[.] 2008
Murasaki Y[.] 1994.

Given-name initials can be used only and only in cases when full form is not available; if it is not indicated on the title page but is known, it should be provided in [square brackets], cf. e.g.:

The sole function of the coma (<,>) after the listed author’s name is to indicate inversion of the given and family names for the sake of alphabetical listing; when no such inversion occurs in the original, the coma must not follow the family name, cf. (e.g.):
   Akamatsu, Tsutomu 1997.
   Akinaga Kazue 1966.
   Kindaichi Haruhiko 1975. Nihongo […], but:
   Kindaichi, Haruhiko 1978. The Japanese Language […]
   Murasaki Kyōko 1979.

No name inversion must be used in the case of the second, third, etc., author, cf. e.g.:


   Bibliographical data in Russian and Greek characters are customarily used in the same way as Roman characters (i.e., no transliteration is applied in the description of the title and the authors full names are also provided in Cyrillic).

   When an edition different from the first edition is used, it should be marked with an upper index figure following the year of publication, cf. e.g.:
   Hattori Shirō 197610. Gengogaku no hōhō [...].
Titles of works cited or referred to in languages other than English, French, and German must be translated or explained in English in [square brackets] following the title, cf. e.g.:

Hattori Shirō 197610. Gengogaku no hōhō [methods in linguistics]. [...] 

The Publisher’s name should be provided after the place of publication followed by a colon, and the original bibliographical data must be provided in full below the transliteration, cf. e.g.:

服部四郎 1976。言語学の方法。東京: 岩波書店。

It is advisable to use instead the English (sub-)title when such is originally also provided; it should follow the original title after two slashes (\//), cf. eg.:


橋本萬太郎 1988。故橋本萬太郎教授による調査資料。東京外国語大学アジア・アフリカ言語分化研究所。

Inamura Tsutomu [&] Yang Liujin 2000. Guoji Hani/Aka Yanjiu Ziliao Mulu // The International Bibliography on Hani/Akha. Tsukuba: University of Tsukuba Institute of History and Anthropology.
稲村務 [&] 杨六金 2000。国际哈尼/阿卡研究资料目录。筑波: 筑波大学历史人类学系。

亀井孝 [&] 河野六郎 [&] 千野栄一編著1988。言語学大事典第1巻世界言語編。東京: 三省堂。

Examples of book publications listing in the bibliography:


Izuyama Atsuko (ed.) 2006. Ryūkyū, Shuri hōgen – hōsō rokuon teipu ni yoru – Hattori Shirō hakase ihin [Shuri dialect of Ryukyuan, on the basis of a tape record left after the late Professor Shiro Hattori]. Tokyo: University of Foreign Studies Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa.


金田一春彦著 1975。日本語。東京: 岩波書店。


久保寺逸彦著作集 2. 2004。アイヌ民族の文学と生活。東京: 草風館。


村崎恭子 1979。カラフトアイヌ語 – 文法篇。東京: 国書刊行会。

村山七郎大林太良共著 1975。日本語の起源。東京: 弘文堂。

Ogawa Naoyoshi [&] Asai Erin (eds.) 1935. *Gengo ni yoru Taiwan Takasago zoku densetsu shū* // The Myths and Traditions of the Formosan Native Tribes (Texts and Notes). Taihoku Imperial University Institute of Linguistics.
小川尚義 [&] 浅井恵倫 1935。原語臺灣高砂族傳說集。臺北帝國大學語言文學研究室 [reprinted 1967: 東京: 刀江書院]。

宋寅聖編著、現代中國學研究所編2006。韓·漢·中·英·日、中國語簡體字。最新漢韓辭典。서울: 泰西出版社。


Tamura Suzuko 1996. *Ainugo Saru högen jiten* [Ainu-Japanese dictionary of the
田村すず子 1996。アイヌ語沙流方言辞典。東京: 草風館。

Examples of journal article publications listing in the bibliography:


Examples of collective volume article publications listing in the bibliography:

加藤高志 2001a。 "クム語語彙"。 角田太作編 少数言語の基礎的言語資料 2001。 吹田： 「環太平洋の言語」成果報告書。


Bibliography must not be divided into parts unless justified.

Illustrations and tables should be numbered respectively and consecutively

(e.g.: Photo 1, Photo 2, Photo 3,..., Map 1, Map 2,..., Fig. 1, Fig 2,..., Table 1, Table 2,..., etc., and should correspond exactly to respective references in the text; they should be placed where the author wishes them to appear (although some shifting may prove necessary in the editing); photos should additionally be sent separately, either electronically or quality printed.

The editor must insist that every author contributing work to this publication reveal all respective authors involved in the creation of said work (including giving their specific affiliation and contribution, i.e. who is the author of the concept, background theories, method, protocol etc. used in the publication), with the main responsibility falling to the author submitting the manuscript. These measures are put into place given that the so called "ghostwriting" or "guest authorship" phenomena display a lack of academic integrity and all detected cases of such will be exposed, to the extent of informing the proper entities (institutions hiring the authors, academic associations, associations of academic editors and so forth). The editor will document all displays of academic misconduct, especially those breaking and infringing the ethics of proper scholarly research.

The editor shall disclose information concerning the sources of funding for the publication, the input of scientific-research institutions, associations and other entities ("financial disclosure"). The first two issues of "Analecta Nipponica" were published in thanks to a Takashima Foundation grant.
Editor’s Preface

ARTICLES

HIDEO WATANABE
渡辺秀夫、古典解釈における「近代」と「前近代」―「古今和歌集序」の“和歌発生論”の理解をめぐって―

MAŁGORZATA KAROLINA CITKO
Elements of “Possibly Chinese” Origin in Selected Poems by Princess Shikishi (1149-1201)

AGNIESZKA ŻUŁAWSKA-UMEDA
Issues Relating to Notes from the Hut of Delusion – Bashō’s Returns from his Wanderings

INTERVIEW

平野啓一郎先生インタビュー 二〇一一年十月十四日
ウルシャワ大学図書館にて 聞き手 ミコワイ・メラノヴィッチ教授

REPRINTED WORKS OF POLISH JAPANOLOGISTS

JOLANTA TUBIElewicz
Superstitions, Magic and Mantic Practices in the Heian Period – Part Two

PROF. JOLANTA TUBIElewicz (1931–2003)

Notes About the Authors

List of Reviewers

Information for Authors

ISSN 2084-2147